Nikon

DIGITAL CAMERA

D3

User's Manual

En

Where to Find It

Find what you're looking for from:

The Q&A Index → pp. iv–ix

Know what you want to do but don't know the function name? Find it from the "question and answer" index.

The Table of Contents → pp. x–xvii

Find items by function or menu name.

The Quick Start Guide → pp. 23–24

A brief guide for those who want to get started taking pictures right away.

The Index → pp. 438–444

Search by key word.

Error Messages → pp. 409–416

If a warning is displayed in the viewfinder or monitor, find the solution here.

Troubleshooting → pp. 402–408

Camera behaving unexpectedly? Find the solution here.

⚠ For Your Safety

Before using the camera for the first time, read the safety instructions in "For Your Safety" (pg. xviii).

Digitutor

Digitutor, a series of "watch and learn" manuals in movie form, is available from the following website:

http://www.nikondigitutor.com/index_eng.html

Package Contents

Be sure all items listed here were included with your camera. *Memory cards are sold separately*.

- ❏ D3 digital camera (pg. 3)
- ❏ BF-1A body cap (pp. 4, 387)
- ❏ BS-2 accessory shoe cover (pg. 3)
- ❏ EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion battery with terminal cover (pp. 32, 34)
- ❏ MH-22 quick charger with power cable and two contact protectors (pp. 32, 433)
- ❏ UC-E4 USB cable (pp. 256, 264)
- ❏ USB cable clip (pg. 259)
- ❏ EG-D2 audio/video cable (pg. 274)
- ❏ AN-D3 strap (pg. 5)

- ❏ Warranty
- ❏ *User's Manual* (this guide)
- ❏ *Quick Guide*
- ❏ *Software Installation Guide*
- ❏ Software Suite CD-ROM
- ❏ Registration card (U. S. A. only)

Symbols and Conventions

To make it easier to find the information you need, the following symbols and conventions are used:

☑	This icon marks cautions; information that should be read before use to prevent damage to the camera.
✎	This icon marks notes; information that should be read before using the camera.

Menu items, options, and messages displayed in the camera monitor are shown in brackets ([ ]).

✎ **Trademark Information**

Macintosh, Mac OS, and QuickTime are registered trademarks of Apple Inc. Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. CompactFlash is a trademark of SanDisk Corporation. Microdrive is a trademark of Hitachi Global Storage Technologies in the United States and other countries. HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC. All other trade names mentioned in this manual or the other documentation provided with your Nikon product are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

D3

Introduction

Tutorial

Image Recording Options

Focus

Release Mode

ISO Sensitivity

Exposure

White Balance

Image Enhancement

Flash Photography

Other Shooting Options

More About Playback

Voice Memos

Connections

Menu Guide

Technical Notes

Q&A Index

Find what you're looking for using this "question and answer" index.

■■ *New Features*

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I take pictures in 35mm format?	Image area	60
How do I take high-quality NEF (RAW) photos?	14-bit NEF (RAW)	68
How do I record photographs using two memory cards?	Slot 2	71
Can I use the monitor as a viewfinder?	Live view	90
Can I control how photos are processed?	Picture Controls	166
How do I preserve details in shadows and highlights?	Active D-Lighting	185
How do I focus on erratically moving subjects?	3D-tracking	307
Can I adjust focus separately for different lenses?	AF fine tune	358

■■ *Camera Setup*

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I focus the viewfinder?	Viewfinder focus	47
How do I keep the monitor from turning off?	Monitor off delay	318
How do I keep the shutter speed and aperture displays from turning off?	Auto meter off	50, 317

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I set the clock?	World time	40, 347
How do I set the clock for daylight savings time?		
How do I change time zones when I travel?		
How do I adjust monitor brightness for menus or playback?	LCD brightness	345
How do I restore default settings?	Two-button reset	206
How do I restore shooting menu defaults?	Reset shooting menu	293
How do I restore Custom Setting defaults?	Reset custom settings	303
How do I change the self-timer delay?	Self-timer delay	318
Can I reverse the electronic analog exposure display?	Reverse indicators	343
Can I display the menus in a different language?	Language	347
Can I save menu settings for use on a different D3 camera?	Save/load settings	355

■■ *Menus and Displays*

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I get more information on a menu?	Help	31
How do I use the menus?	Using the menus	26
What do these indicators mean?	Viewfinder, control panels, shooting information display	8, 10, 12, 14
What information is in the shooting information display?		
What does this warning mean?	Error messages and displays	409
How much charge does the battery have left?	Battery level	48
How do I get more information about the battery?	Battery info	353

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I keep the file number from being reset when I insert a new memory card?	File number sequence	321
How do I reset file numbering to zero?		
How do I clean the camera or lens?	Cleaning the camera	390

■■ *Taking Photographs*

Question	Key phrase	See page
How many more shots can I take with this card?	Number of exposures remaining	49
How do I take bigger photographs?	Image quality and size	65, 69
How can I get more photos on the memory card?		
Can I control how the camera focuses?	Autofocus	73
How do I take a lot of photographs quickly?	Release mode	86
Can I change the frame advance rate?	Shooting speed	88, 320
Can I shoot a self-portrait?	Self-timer mode	103
Can I take pictures under low light without the flash?	ISO sensitivity	108
Can the ISO sensitivity I choose be adjusted to ensure optimal exposure?	ISO sensitivity auto control	110
How do I freeze or blur moving objects?	Exposure mode S (shutter-priority auto)	120
How do I blur background details or keep both foreground and background in focus?	Exposure mode A (aperture-priority auto)	122

Question	Key phrase	See page
Can I set both shutter speed and aperture manually?	Exposure mode M (manual)	124
Can I make photos brighter or darker?	Exposure compensation	132
How do I make a time exposure?	Long time-exposures	126
Can I vary exposure or flash level automatically over a series of photos?	Exposure and flash bracketing	135, 327
Can I create multiple copies of a photo using different white balance settings?	White balance bracketing	139, 327
How do I adjust white balance?	White balance	144
How do I change settings for the optional flash unit?	Flash mode	197
How can I record multiple shots as a single photograph?	Multiple exposure	208
Can I record voice memo when taking a photograph?	Voice memo	248
Can I pick the standard exposure level?	Fine tune optimal exposure	315
How can I reduce blur?	Exposure delay mode	324

■■ *Viewing Photographs*

Question	Key phrase	See page
Can I view my photographs on the camera?	Camera playback	228
Can I view more information about photos?	Photo info	231
Why do parts of my photos blink?	Photo info, highlights	232, 282

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I get rid of an unwanted photo?	Deleting individual photos	245
Can I delete several photos at once?	Delete	281
Can I zoom in on pictures to make sure they're in focus?	Playback zoom	243
Can I protect photos from accidental deletion?	Protect	244
Can I hide selected photos?	Hide image	281
How do I tell if parts of my photos may be overexposed?	Display mode: highlights	282
How do I tell where the camera focused?	Display mode: focus point	282
Can I view photos as they are taken?	Image review	287
Can I record a voice memo on photos?	Voice memo	251
Is there an automatic playback ("slide show") option?	Slide show	288

■■ *Retouching Photographs*

Question	Key phrase	See page
How do I bring out details in shadows?	D-Lighting	363
Can I get rid of red eye?	Red-eye correction	364
Can I crop photographs on the camera?	Trim	365
Can I create a monochrome copy of a photograph?	Monochrome	366
Can I create a copy with different colors?	Filter effects	367
Can I use camera to create JPEG copies of NEF (RAW) photographs?	Color balance	367
Can I overlay two photos to make a single image?	Image overlay	368

■■ *Viewing or Printing Photographs on Other Devices*

Question	Key phrase	See page
Can I view my photos on TV?	Television playback	274
Can I view my photos in High Definition?	HDMI	276
How do I copy photos to my computer?	Connecting to a computer	256
How do I print photographs?	Printing photographs	262
Can I print photos without a computer?	Printing via USB	263
Can I print the date on my photographs?	Time stamp	266, 270
How do I order professional prints?	Print set (DPOF)	272

■■ *Optional Accessories*

Question	Key phrase	See page
What optional flash units (Speedlights) can I use?	Optional flash units	191
What lenses can I use?	Compatible lenses	378
What AC adapters, remote cords, and viewfinder accessories are available for my camera?	Other accessories	383
What memory cards can I use?	Approved memory cards	389
What software is available for my camera?	Other accessories	387

Table of Contents

Q&A Index iv
For Your Safety xviii
Notices xxi

Introduction **1**

Overview 2
Getting to Know the Camera 3
Camera Body 3
The Top Control Panel 8
The Rear Control Panel 10
The Viewfinder Display 12
The Shooting Information Display 14
The Command Dials 16
Quick Start Guide 23

Tutorial **25**

Camera Menus 26
Using Camera Menus 28
Help 31
First Steps 32
Charge the Battery 32
Insert the Battery 34
Attach a Lens 37
Basic Setup 39
Insert a Memory Card 42
Adjust Viewfinder Focus 47
Basic Photography and Playback 48

Image Recording Options 59

Image Area ... 60
Image Quality ... 65
Image Size ... 69
Slot 2 ... 71

Focus 73

Focus Mode ... 74
AF-Area Mode ... 76
Focus Point Selection ... 78
Focus Lock ... 80
Manual Focus ... 83

Release Mode 85

Choosing a Release Mode ... 86
Continuous Mode ... 88
Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View) ... 90
Self-Timer Mode ... 103
Mirror up Mode ... 105

ISO Sensitivity 107

Choosing ISO Sensitivity Manually ... 108
Auto ISO Sensitivity Control ... 110

Exposure 113

Metering 114
Exposure Mode 116
P: Programmed Auto 118
S: Shutter-Priority Auto 120
A: Aperture-Priority Auto 122
M: Manual 124
Shutter-Speed and Aperture Lock 127
Autoexposure (AE) Lock 129
Exposure Compensation 132
Bracketing 134

White Balance 143

White Balance Options 144
Fine-Tuning White Balance 147
Choosing a Color Temperature 151
Preset Manual 152

Image Enhancement 165

Picture Controls 166
Creating Custom Picture Controls 174
Active D-Lighting 185
Color Space 187

Flash Photography 189

The Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS) 190
Compatible Flash Units 191
CLS-Compatible Flash Units 191
Other Flash Units 194
i-TTL Flash Control 196
Flash Modes 197

FV Lock 201
Flash Contacts 204

Other Shooting Options **205**

Two-Button Reset: Restoring Default Settings 206
Multiple Exposure 208
Interval Timer Photography 213
Non-CPU Lenses 220
Using a GPS Unit 223

More About Playback **227**

Full-Frame Playback 228
Photo Information 231
Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback 241
Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom 243
Protecting Photographs from Deletion 244
Deleting Individual Photographs 245

Voice Memos **247**

Recording Voice Memos 248
Playing Voice Memos 253

Connections **255**

Connecting to a Computer 256
Direct USB Connection 258
Wireless and Ethernet Networks 261
Printing Photographs 262
Direct USB Connection 263
Viewing Photographs on TV 274
Standard Definition Devices 274
High-Definition Devices 276

▶ The Playback Menu: Managing Images....278
Delete....281
Playback Folder....281
Hide Image....281
Display Mode....282
Copy Image(s)....283
Image Review....287
After Delete....287
Rotate Tall....287
Slide Show....288
Print Set (DPOF)....289
The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options....290
Shooting Menu Bank....291
Reset Shooting Menu....293
Active Folder....293
File Naming....296
Slot 2....296
Image Quality....296
Image Size....297
Image Area....297
JPEG Compression....297
NEF (RAW) Recording....297
White Balance....297
Set Picture Control....298
Manage Picture Control....298
Color Space....298
Active D-Lighting....298
Long Exp. NR (Long Exposure Noise Reduction)....299
High ISO NR....299
ISO Sensitivity Settings....300
Live View....300
Multiple Exposure....300
Interval Timer Shooting....300

Custom Settings: Fine-Tuning Camera Settings 301
Ⓒ: Custom Setting Bank 303
Ⓡ: Reset Custom Settings 303
a: Autofocus 304
a1: AF-C Priority Selection 304
a2: AF-S Priority Selection 305
a3: Dynamic AF Area 306
a4: Focus Tracking with Lock-On 308
a5: AF Activation 308
a6: Focus Point Illumination 309
a7: Focus Point Wrap-Around 310
a8: AF Point Selection 310
a9: AF-ON Button 311
a10: Vertical AF-ON Button 312
b: Metering/Exposure 313
b1: ISO Sensitivity Step Value 313
b2: EV Steps for Exposure Cntrl. 313
b3: EV Steps for Exposure Comp. 313
b4: Easy Exposure Compensation 314
b5: Center-Weighted Area 315
b6: Fine Tune Optimal Exposure 315
c: Timers/AE Lock 317
c1: Shutter-Release Button AE-L 317
c2: Auto Meter-off Delay 317
c3: Self-Timer Delay 318
c4: Monitor off Delay 318
d: Shooting/Display 319
d1: Beep 319
d2: Shooting Speed 320
d3: Max. Continuous Release 320
d4: File Number Sequence 321
d5: Control Panel/Viewfinder 322
d6: Shooting Info Display 323
d7: LCD Illumination 324
d8: Exposure Delay Mode 324

e: Bracketing/Flash 325
e1: Flash Sync Speed 325
e2: Flash Shutter Speed 326
e3: Modeling Flash 326
e4: Auto Bracketing Set 327
e5: Auto Bracketing (Mode M) 328
e6: Bracketing Order 329
f: Controls 330
f1: Multi Selector Center Button 330
f2: Multi Selector 331
f3: Photo Info/Playback 331
f4: Assign FUNC. Button 331
f5: Assign Preview Button 337
f6: Assign AE-L/AF-L Button 338
f7: Customize Command Dials 339
f8: Release Button to Use Dial 341
f9: No Memory Card? 342
f10: Reverse Indicators 343
The Setup Menu: Camera Setup 344
Format Memory Card 345
LCD Brightness 345
Lock Mirror up for Cleaning 345
Video Mode 346
HDMI 346
World Time 347
Language 347
Image Comment 348
Auto Image Rotation 349
Voice Memo 349
Voice Memo Overwrite 350
Voice Memo Button 350
Audio Output 350
USB 350
Dust off Ref Photo 351
Battery Info 353
Wireless Transmitter 354

Image Authentication 354
Save/Load Settings 355
GPS 357
Virtual Horizon 357
Non-CPU Lens Data 357
AF Fine Tune 358
Firmware Version 359
The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies 360
D-Lighting 363
Red-Eye Correction 364
Trim 365
Monochrome 366
Filter Effects 367
Color Balance 367
Image Overlay 368
Side-by-Side Comparison 371
My Menu: Creating a Custom Menu 373
Adding Options to My Menu 373
Deleting Options from My Menu 375
Reordering Options in My Menu 376

Technical Notes **377**

Compatible Lenses 378
Other Accessories 383
Caring for the Camera 390
Storage 390
Cleaning 390
Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions 398
Troubleshooting 402
Error Messages 409
Appendix 417
Specifications 427
Index 438

For Your Safety

To prevent damage to your Nikon product or injury to yourself or to others, read the following safety precautions in their entirety before using this equipment. Keep these safety instructions where all those who use the product will read them.

The consequences that could result from failure to observe the precautions listed in this section are indicated by the following symbol:

> ⚠ This icon marks warnings. To prevent possible injury, read all warnings before using this Nikon product.

■■ *WARNINGS*

⚠ **Keep the sun out of the frame**
Keep the sun well out of the frame when shooting backlit subjects. Sunlight focused into the camera when the sun is in or close to the frame could cause a fire.

⚠ **Do not look at the sun through the viewfinder**
Viewing the sun or other strong light source through the viewfinder could cause permanent visual impairment.

⚠ **Using the viewfinder diopter control**
When operating the viewfinder diopter control with your eye to the viewfinder, care should be taken not to put your finger in your eye accidentally.

⚠ **Turn off immediately in the event of malfunction**
Should you notice smoke or an unusual smell coming from the equipment or AC adapter (available separately), unplug the AC adapter and remove the battery immediately, taking care to avoid burns. Continued operation could result in injury. After removing the battery, take the equipment to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

⚠ **Do not disassemble**
Touching the product's internal parts could result in injury. In the event of malfunction, the product should be repaired only by a qualified technician. Should the product break open as the result of a fall or other accident, remove the battery and/or AC adapter and then take the product to a Nikon-authorized service center for inspection.

⚠ **Do not use in the presence of flammable gas**
Do not use electronic equipment in the presence of flammable gas, as this could result in explosion or fire.

⚠ **Keep out of reach of children**
Failure to observe this precaution could result in injury.

⚠ **Do not place the strap around the neck of an infant or child**
Placing the camera strap around the neck of an infant or child could result in strangulation.

⚠ **Observe proper precautions when handling batteries**
Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries for use in this product:

- Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.
- Do not short or disassemble the battery.
- Be sure the product is off before replacing the battery. If you are using an AC adapter, be sure it is unplugged.
- Do not attempt to insert the battery upside down or backwards.
- Do not expose the battery to flame or to excessive heat.
- Do not immerse in or expose to water.
- Replace the terminal cover when transporting the battery. Do not transport or store the battery with metal objects such as necklaces or hairpins.
- Batteries are prone to leakage when fully discharged. To avoid damage to the product, be sure to remove the battery when no charge remains.
- When the battery is not in use, attach the terminal cover and store in a cool, dry place.
- The battery may be hot immediately after use or when the product has been used on battery power for an extended period. Before removing the battery turn the camera off and allow the battery to cool.
- Discontinue use immediately should you notice any changes in the battery, such as discoloration or deformation.

⚠ **Observe proper precautions when handling the quick charger**

- Keep dry. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or electric shock.
- Dust on or near the metal parts of the plug should be removed with a dry cloth. Continued use could result in fire.
- Do not handle the power cable or go near the charger during thunderstorms. Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.
- Do not damage, modify, or forcibly tug or bend the power cable. Do not place it under heavy objects or expose it to heat or flame. Should the insulation be damaged and the wires become exposed, take the power cable to a Nikon-authorized service representative for inspection. Failure to observe this precaution could result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not handle the plug or charger with wet hands. Failure to observe this precaution could result in electric shock.

⚠ **Use appropriate cables**

When connecting cables to the input and output jacks, use only the cables provided or sold by Nikon for the purpose to maintain compliance with product regulations.

⚠ **CD-ROMs**

CD-ROMs containing software or manuals should not be played back on audio CD equipment. Playing CD-ROMs on an audio CD player could cause hearing loss or damage the equipment.

⚠ **Observe caution when using a flash**

- Using optional flash units in close contact with the skin or other objects could cause burns.
- Using optional flash units close to the subject's eyes could cause temporary visual impairment. Particular care should be observed when photographing infants, when the flash should be no less than one meter (39 in.) from the subject.

⚠ **Avoid contact with liquid crystal**

Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury due to broken glass and to prevent the liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes or mouth.

Notices

- No part of the manuals included with this product may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form, by any means, without Nikon's prior written permission.
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in these manuals at any time and without prior notice.
- Nikon will not be held liable for any damages resulting from the use of this product.
- While every effort has been made to ensure that the information in these manuals is accurate and complete, we would appreciate it were you to bring any errors or omissions to the attention of the Nikon representative in your area (address provided separately).

Notices for Customers in the U.S.A.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Radio Frequency Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for help.

CAUTIONS

Modifications

The FCC requires the user be notified that any changes or modifications made to this device that are not expressly approved by Nikon Corporation may void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Interface Cables

Use the interface cables sold or provided by Nikon for your equipment. Using other interface cables may exceed the limits of Class B Part 15 of the FCC rules.

Notice for Customers in the State of California

WARNING: Handling the cord on this product may expose you to lead, a chemical known to the State of California to cause birth defects or other reproductive harm. *Wash hands after handling.*

Nikon Inc., 1300 Walt Whitman Road, Melville, New York 11747-3064, U.S.A.
Tel.: 631-547-4200

Notices for Customers in Canada

CAUTION

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

ATTENTION

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Symbol for Separate Collection in European Countries

This symbol indicates that this product is to be collected separately. The following apply only to users in European countries:

- This product is designated for separate collection at an appropriate collection point. Do not dispose of as household waste.
- For more information, contact the retailer or the local authorities in charge of waste management.

Notice Concerning Prohibition of Copying or Reproduction

Note that simply being in possession of material that has been digitally copied or reproduced by means of a scanner, digital camera, or other device may be punishable by law.

- **Items prohibited by law from being copied or reproduced**

  Do not copy or reproduce paper money, coins, securities, government bonds, or local government bonds, even if such copies or reproductions are stamped "Sample."

  The copying or reproduction of paper money, coins, or securities which are circulated in a foreign country is prohibited.

  Unless the prior permission of the government has been obtained, the copying or reproduction or unused postage stamps or post cards issued by the government is prohibited.

  The copying or reproduction of stamps issued by the government and of certified documents stipulated by law is prohibited.

- **Cautions on certain copies and reproductions**

  The government has issued cautions on copies or reproductions of securities issued by private companies (shares, bills, checks, gift certificates, etc.), commuter passes, or coupon tickets, except when a minimum of necessary copies are to be provided for business use by a company. Also, do not copy or reproduce passports issued by the government, licenses issued by public agencies and private groups, ID cards, and tickets, such as passes and meal coupons.

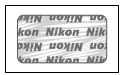
- **Comply with copyright notices**

  The copying or reproduction of copyrighted creative works such as books, music, paintings, woodcuts, prints, maps, drawings, movies, and photographs is governed by national and international copyright laws. Do not use this product for the purpose of making illegal copies or to infringe copyright laws.

Disposing of Data Storage Devices
Please note that deleting images or formatting memory cards or other data storage devices does not completely erase the original image data. Deleted files can sometimes be recovered from discarded storage devices using commercially available software, potentially resulting in the malicious use of personal image data. Ensuring the privacy of such data is the user's responsibility.

Before discarding a data storage device or transferring ownership to another person, erase all data using commercial deletion software, or format the device and then completely refill it with images containing no private information (for example, pictures of empty sky). Be sure to also replace any pictures selected for preset manual. Care should be taken to avoid injury when physically destroying data storage devices.

Use Only Nikon Brand Electronic Accessories
Nikon cameras are designed to the highest standards and include complex electronic circuitry. Only Nikon brand electronic accessories (including battery chargers, batteries, AC adapters, and flash accessories) certified by Nikon specifically for use with this Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within the operational and safety requirements of this electronic circuitry.



The use of non-Nikon electronic accessories could damage the camera and may void your Nikon warranty. The use of third-party rechargeable Li-ion batteries not bearing the Nikon holographic seal shown at right could interfere with normal operation of the camera or result in the batteries overheating, igniting, rupturing, or leaking.

For more information about Nikon brand accessories, contact a local authorized Nikon dealer.

Before Taking Important Pictures

Before taking pictures on important occasions (such as at weddings or before taking the camera on a trip), take a test shot to ensure that the camera is functioning normally. Nikon will not be held liable for damages or lost profits that may result from product malfunction.

Life-Long Learning

As part of Nikon's "Life-Long Learning" commitment to ongoing product support and education, continually-updated information is available online at the following sites:

- **For users in the U.S.A.**: ***http://www.nikonusa.com/***
- **For users in Europe and Africa**: ***http://www.europe-nikon.com/support***
- **For users in Asia, Oceania, and the Middle East**: ***http://www.nikon-asia.com/***

Visit these sites to keep up-to-date with the latest product information, tips, answers to frequently-asked questions (FAQs), and general advice on digital imaging and photography. Additional information may be available from the Nikon representative in your area. See the following URL for contact information: ***http://nikonimaging.com/***

Introduction

This chapter covers information you will need to know before using the camera, including the names of camera parts.

Overview ..... **pg. 2**

Getting to Know the Camera ..... **pg. 3**

Camera Body ..... pg. 3
The Top Control Panel ..... pg. 8
The Rear Control Panel ..... pg. 10
The Viewfinder Display ..... pg. 12
The Shooting Information Display ..... pg. 14
The Command Dials ..... pg. 16

Quick Start Guide ..... **pg. 23**

Overview

Thank you for your purchase of a Nikon single-lens reflex (SLR) digital camera. Please be sure to read all instructions thoroughly to get the most from the camera, and keep them where they will be read by all those who use the product.

☑ Use Only Nikon Brand Accessories

Only Nikon brand accessories certified by Nikon specifically for use with your Nikon digital camera are engineered and proven to operate within its operational and safety requirements. THE USE OF NON-NIKON ACCESSORIES COULD DAMAGE YOUR CAMERA AND MAY VOID YOUR NIKON WARRANTY.

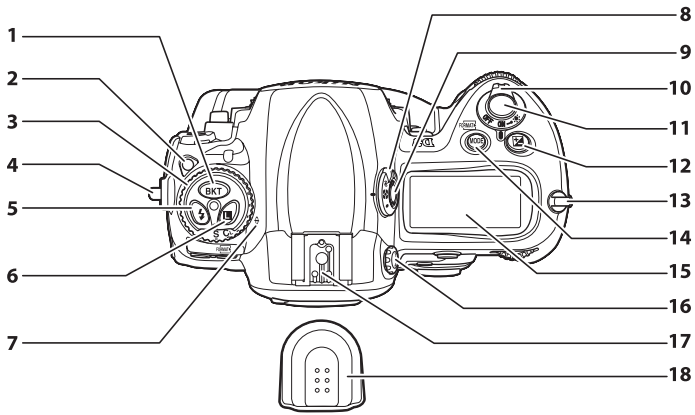
☑ Servicing the Camera and Accessories

The camera is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or a Nikon-authorized service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional flash units, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.

Getting to Know the Camera

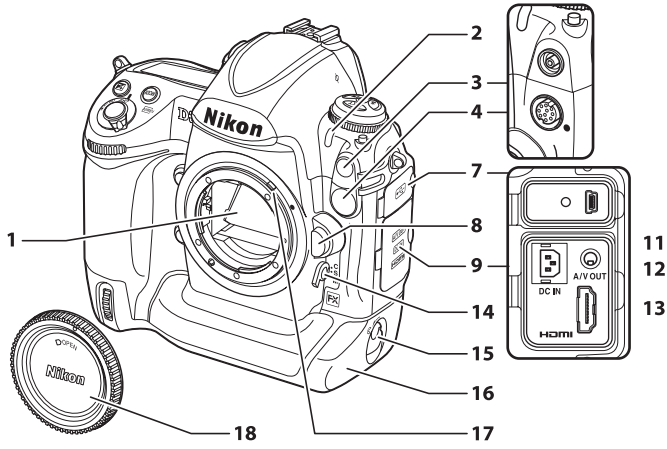
Take a few moments to familiarize yourself with camera controls and displays. You may find it helpful to bookmark this section and refer to it as you read through the rest of the manual.

Camera Body



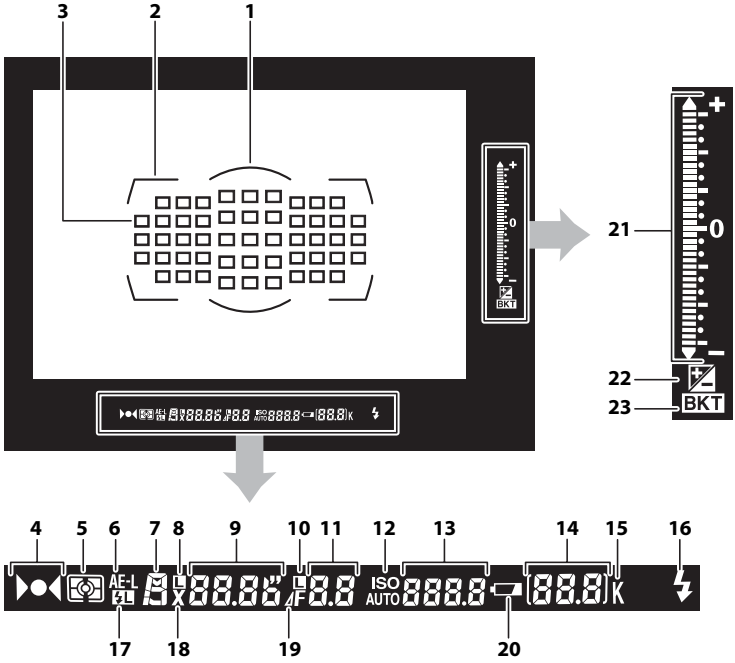
1 **BKT** (bracketing) button 135, 139, 327
2 Release mode dial lock release 87
3 Release mode dial 87
4 Eyelet for camera strap 5
5 ϟ (flash mode) button 199
6 L (command lock) button 127, 128
7 Focal plane mark (⊖) 84
8 Metering selector 115
9 Metering selector lock button 115
10 Power switch 48
11 Shutter-release button 55, 56
12 ± (exposure compensation) button 132
13 Eyelet for camera strap 5
14 MODE (exposure mode) button 117
FORMAT (format) button 45
15 Top control panel 8
16 Diopter adjustment knob 47
17 Accessory shoe ..... 22, 204 (for optional flash unit)
18 Accessory shoe cover 22, 204, 400

Camera Body (Continued)



1 Image quality (JPEG images) ..66
2 "Remaining" indicator 49
3 Image size 70
4 ISO sensitivity indicator 108
Auto ISO sensitivity indicator 110
5 ISO sensitivity 108
ISO sensitivity (high/low gain) 109
Number of exposures remaining 49
Length of voice memo 251
White balance fine-tuning.... 150
White balance preset number 162
Color temperature 151
PC mode indicator 259
6 "K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) 49
Color temperature indicator 151
7 Memory card slot indicators... 71
Image quality 66
8 White-balance bracketing indicator 139
9 Voice memo recording indicator (shooting mode) 249
10 Voice memo status indicator 251, 252
11 Voice memo recording mode 249
12 White balance 144
White balance fine-tuning indicator 150

The Viewfinder Display



1 12-mm reference circle for center-weighted metering ... 114
2 AF area brackets 47, 95
3 Focus points 78, 310
Spot metering targets 114
4 Focus indicator 55, 84
5 Metering 114
6 Autoexposure (AE) lock 129
7 Exposure mode 116
8 Shutter speed lock icon 127
9 Shutter-speed 120, 124
10 Aperture lock icon 128
11 Aperture (f-number) 122, 124
Aperture (number of stops) 123, 381

12 ISO sensitivity indicator 108
Auto ISO sensitivity indicator 110
13 ISO sensitivity 108
14 Frame count 49
Number of exposures remaining 49
Number of shots remaining before memory buffer fills 88
Preset white balance recording indicator 155
Exposure compensation value 132
PC mode indicator 259
15 "K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) 49
16 Flash-ready indicator * 202
17 FV lock indicator 202
18 Flash sync indicator 325
19 Aperture stop indicator .. 123, 381
20 Battery indicator 48
21 Electronic analog exposure display 126
Exposure compensation display 133
Tilt indicator 333
22 Exposure compensation indicator 132
23 Exposure and flash bracketing indicator 135

***** Displayed when an optional flash unit is attached (pg. 191). The flash-ready indicator lights when the flash is charged.

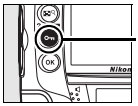
☑ No Battery

When the battery is totally exhausted or no battery is inserted, the display in the viewfinder will dim. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction. The viewfinder display will return to normal when a fully-charged battery is inserted.

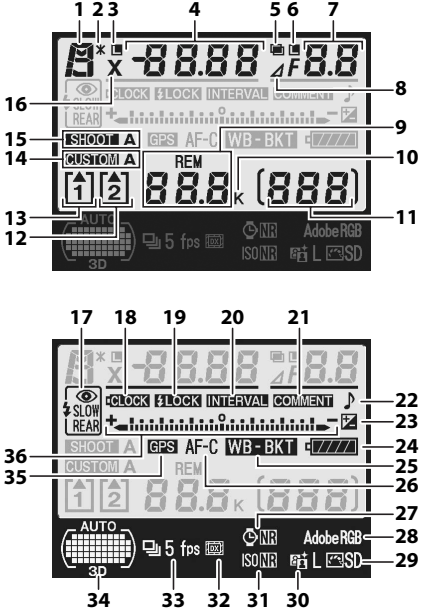
☑ The Control Panel and Viewfinder Displays

The brightness of the control panel and viewfinder displays varies with temperature, and the response times of the displays may drop at low temperatures. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

The Shooting Information Display



Shooting information, including shutter speed, aperture, the number of exposures remaining, and AF-area mode is displayed in the monitor when the info button is pressed. To clear shooting information from the monitor, press the info button again or press the shutter-release button halfway. At default settings, the monitor will turn off automatically if no operations are performed for about 20 seconds.



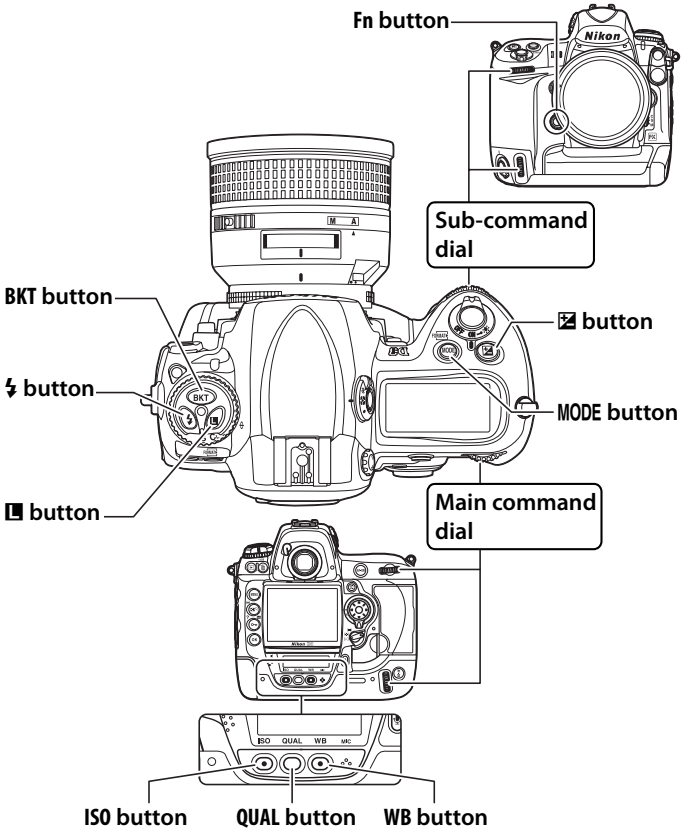
See Also

For information on choosing how long the monitor stays on, see Custom Setting c4 ([Monitor off delay], pg. 318). For information on changing the color of the lettering in the shooting information display, see Custom Setting d6 ([Shooting info display], pg. 323).

1 Exposure mode 116
2 Flexible program indicator ... 119
3 Shutter-speed lock icon 127
4 Shutter speed 120, 124
Exposure compensation value 132
Number of shots in exposure and flash bracketing sequence 135
Number of shots in WB bracketing sequence 139
Focal length (non-CPU lenses) 222
5 Multiple exposure indicator 210
6 Aperture lock icon 128
7 Aperture (f-number) 122, 124
Aperture (number of stops) 123, 381
Exposure and flash bracketing increment 136
WB bracketing increment 140
Maximum aperture (non-CPU lenses) 222
8 Aperture stop indicator ... 123, 381
9 Number of exposures remaining 49
10 "K" (appears when memory remains for over 1000 exposures) 49
11 Frame count 49
Manual lens number 222
12 Memory card indicator (slot 2) 42, 45
13 Memory card indicator (slot 1) 42, 45
14 Custom settings bank 303
15 Shooting menu bank 291
16 Flash sync indicator 325
17 Flash mode 197
18 Clock battery indicator 41, 393
19 FV lock indicator 202
20 Interval timer indicator 216
21 Image comment indicator 348
22 "Beep" indicator 319
23 Exposure compensation indicator 132
24 Battery indicator 48
25 Exposure and flash bracketing indicator 135
WB bracketing indicator 139
26 Focus mode indicator 74
27 Long exposure noise reduction indicator 299
28 Color space indicator 187
29 Picture Control indicator 169
30 Active D-Lighting indicator ... 185
31 High ISO noise reduction indicator 299
32 Image area indicator 61
33 Release mode (single frame/ continuous) indicator 86
Continuous shooting speed 320
34 Auto-area AF indicator 77
Focus points indicator 78
AF-area mode indicator 77
3D-tracking indicator 77, 307
35 GPS connection indicator 224
36 Electronic analog exposure display 126

The Command Dials

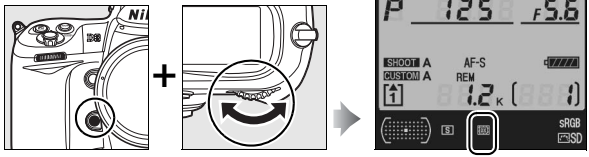
The main- and sub-command dials are used alone or in combination with other controls to adjust a variety of settings.



■■ *Image Quality and Size*

Press the **Fn** *or* **QUAL** *button* and rotate the command dials.

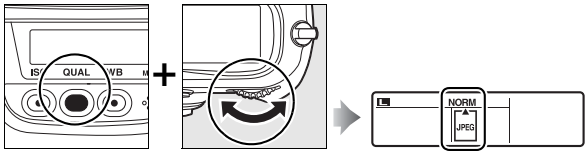
Choose an image area (pg. 64)*



Fn button | Main command dial | Shooting information display

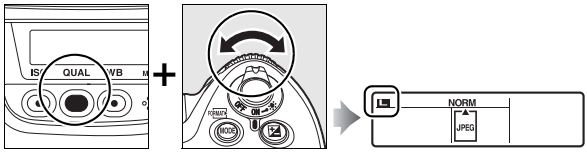
***** The DX format image area is automatically selected when a DX lens is attached.

Set image quality (pg. 66)



QUAL button | Main command dial | Rear control panel

Choose an image size (pg. 70)

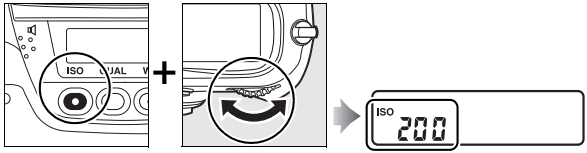


QUAL button | Sub-command dial | Rear control panel

■■ *ISO Sensitivity*

Press the **ISO** *button* and rotate the main command dial.

Set ISO sensitivity (pg. 108)

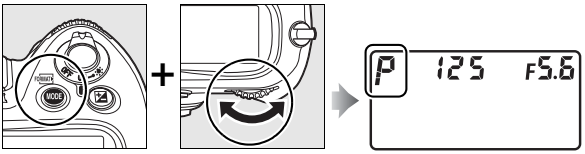


ISO button | Main command dial | Rear control panel

■■ *Exposure*

Press the **MODE** *button* and rotate the main command dial to choose the exposure mode.

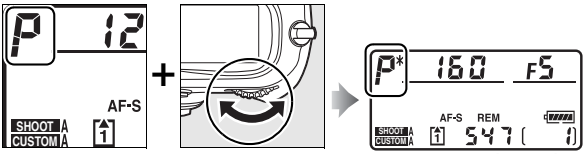
Choose the exposure mode (pg. 117)



MODE button | Main command dial | Top control panel

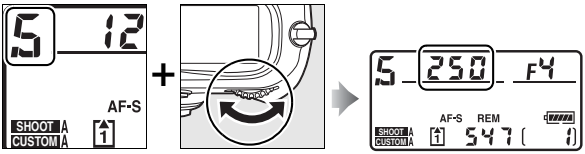
Use the command dials to adjust exposure.

Choose a combination of aperture and shutter speed (exposure mode *P*; pg. 119)



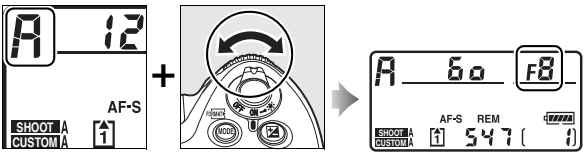
Exposure mode *P* | Main command dial | Top control panel

Choose a shutter speed (exposure mode *S* or *M*; pg. 120, 125)



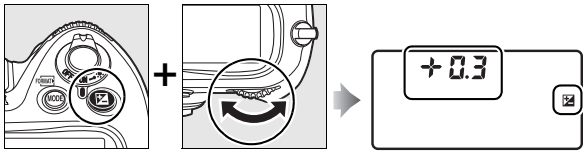
Exposure mode *S* or *M* | Main command dial | Top control panel

Choose an aperture (exposure mode *A* or *M*; pg. 122, 125)



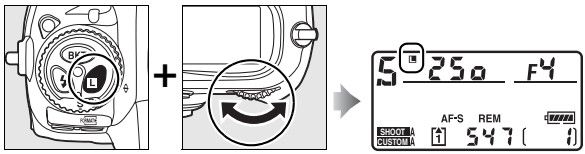
Exposure mode *A* or *M* | Sub-command dial | Top control panel

Set exposure compensation (pg. 132)



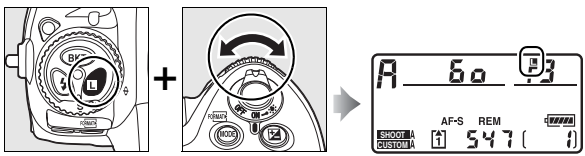
button | Main command dial | Top control panel

Shutter speed lock (exposure mode S or M; pg. 127)



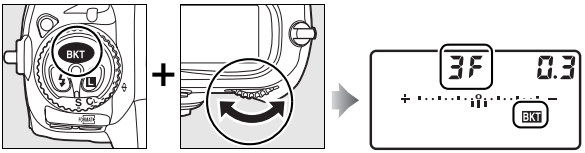
L button | Main command dial | Top control panel

Aperture lock (exposure mode A or M; pg. 128)



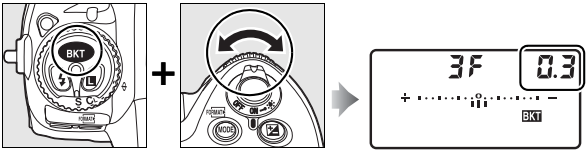
L button | Sub-command dial | Top control panel

Activate or cancel bracketing/ select number of shots in bracketing sequence (pp. 135, 138)



BKT button Main command dial Top control panel

Select bracketing exposure increment (pg. 136)

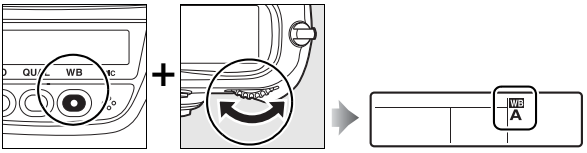


BKT button Sub-command dial Top control panel

■■ *White Balance*

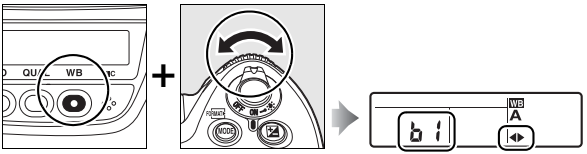
Press the **WB** *button* and rotate the command dials.

Choose a white balance setting (pg. 145)



WB button Main command dial Rear control panel

Fine-tune white balance (pg. 150), set color temperature (pg. 151), or choose a white balance preset (pg. 162)

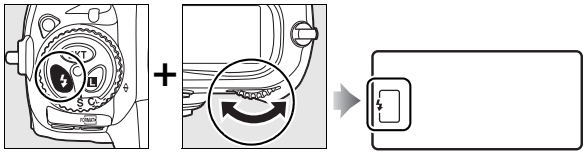


WB button Sub-command dial Rear control panel

■■ *Flash Settings*

Press the ϟ button and rotate the main command dial.

Choose flash mode (pg. 199)



ϟ button | Main command dial | Top control panel

The Fn Button

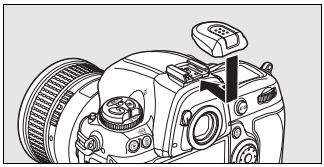
Depending on the option selected for Custom Setting f4 ([Assign FUNC. button], pg. 331), the **Fn** button and command dials can be used to select shutter speed and aperture in steps of 1 EV, choose pre-specified lens data for non-CPU lenses, or select the focus point.

The Depth-of-Field Preview and AE-L/AF-L Buttons

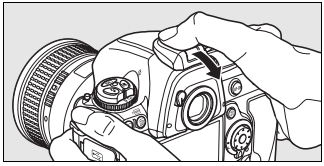
Depending on the options selected for Custom Settings f5 ([Assign preview button], pg. 337) and f6 ([Assign AE-L/AF-L button], pg. 338), the depth-of-field preview and **AE-L/AF-L** buttons can be used with the command dials to perform the same functions as the **Fn** button.

The BS-2 Accessory Shoe Cover

The supplied BS-2 accessory shoe cover can be used to protect the accessory shoe or to prevent light reflected from the metal parts of the shoe from appearing in photographs. The BS-2 attaches to the camera accessory shoe as shown at right.



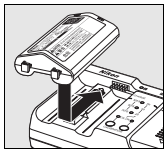
To remove the accessory shoe cover, hold it down with your thumb and slide it off as shown at right while keeping a firm grip on the camera.



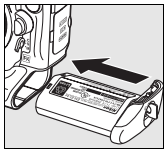
Quick Start Guide

Follow these steps for a quick start with the D3.

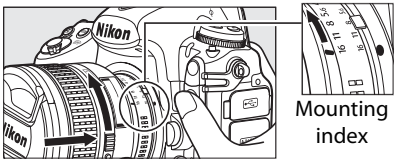
1 Charge the battery (pg. 32).



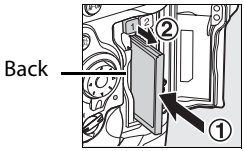
2 Insert the battery (pg. 34).



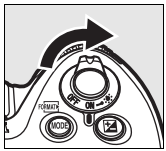
3 Attach a lens (pg. 37).



4 Insert a memory card (pg. 42).

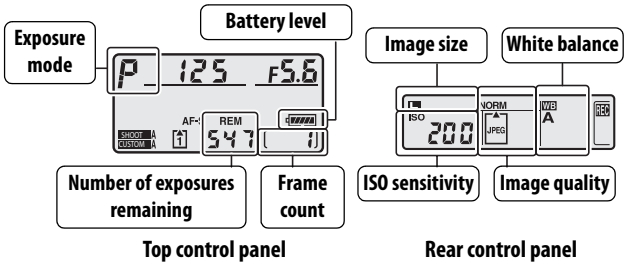


5 Turn the camera on (pg. 48).



For information on choosing a language and setting the time and date, see page 39. See page 47 for information on adjusting viewfinder focus.

6 Check camera settings (pp. 48, 51).

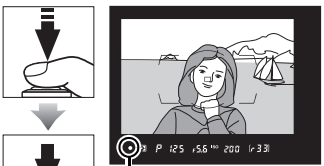


7 Select single-servo autofocus (pg. 53).

Rotate the focus-mode selector to **S** (single-servo autofocus).

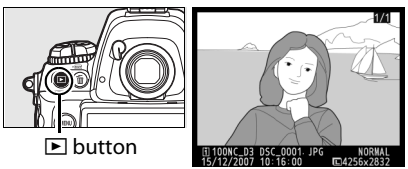
8 Focus and shoot (pp. 55, 56).

Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus, then press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to take the photograph.



Focus indicator

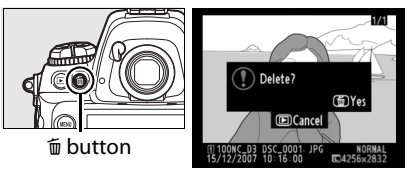
9 View the photograph (pg. 57).



▶ button

10 Delete unwanted photos (pg. 58).

Press 🗑 twice to delete the current photograph.



🗑 button

Tutorial

This section describes how to use the camera menus, how to ready the camera for use, and how to take your first pictures and play them back.

Camera Menus ..... pg. 26

Using Camera Menus ..... pg. 28
Help ..... pg. 31

First Steps ..... pg. 32

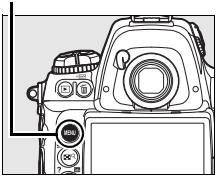
Charge the Battery ..... pg. 32
Insert the Battery ..... pg. 34
Attach a Lens ..... pg. 37
Basic Setup ..... pg. 39
Insert a Memory Card ..... pg. 42
Adjust Viewfinder Focus ..... pg. 47

Basic Photography and Playback ..... pg. 48

Camera Menus

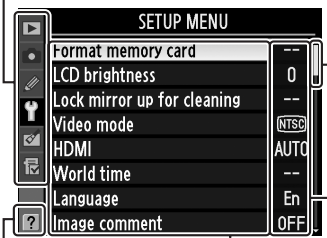
Most shooting, playback, and setup options can be accessed from the camera menus. To view the menus, press the **MENU** button.

MENU button



Tabs
Choose from playback, shooting, Custom Settings, setup, retouch, and My menus (see following page).

Slider shows position in current menu.



Current settings are shown by icons.

?
If "**?**" icon is displayed, help for current item can be viewed by pressing (**?**) button (pg. 31).

Menu options
Options in current menu.

▮▮ *Menus*

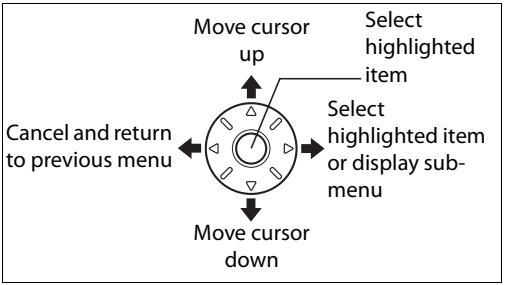
The following menus are available:

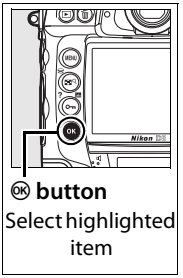
Menu	Description
Playback	Adjust playback settings and manage photos (pg. 278).
Shooting	Adjust shooting settings (pg. 290).
Custom Settings	Personalize camera settings (pg. 301).
Setup	Format memory cards and perform basic camera setup (pg. 344).
Retouch	Create retouched copies of existing photographs (pg. 360).
My Menu	Create a menu of custom options (pg. 373).

Using Camera Menus

■■ *Menu Controls*

The multi selector and ⊛ button are used to navigate the menus.



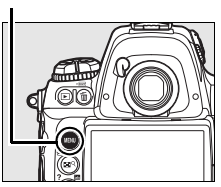


■■ *Navigating the Menus*

Follow the steps below to navigate the menus.

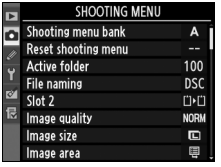
1 Display the menus.

Press the MENU button to display the menus.



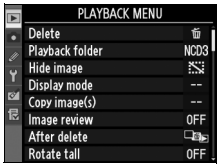
2 Highlight the icon for the current menu.

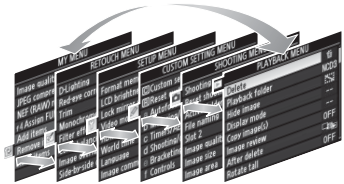
Press ◀ to highlight the icon for the current menu.



3 Select a menu.

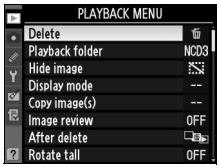
Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired menu.





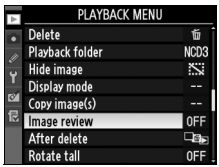
4 Position the cursor in the selected menu.

Press ▶ to position the cursor in the selected menu.



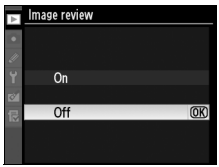
5 Highlight a menu item.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight a menu item.



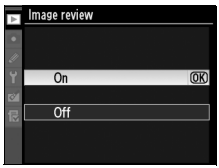
6 Display options.

Press ▶ to display options for the selected menu item.



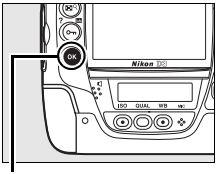
7 Highlight an option.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option.

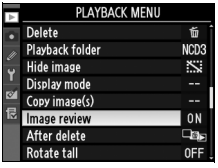


8 Select the highlighted item.

Press ⓚ to select the highlighted item. To exit without making a selection, press the MENU button.



ⓚ button

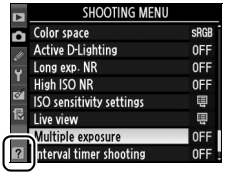


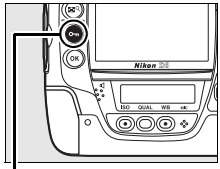
Note the following points:

- Menu items that are displayed in gray are not currently available.
- While pressing ▶ or the center of the multi selector generally has the same effect as pressing ⓚ, there are some cases in which selection can only be made by pressing ⓚ.
- To exit the menus and return to shooting mode, press the shutter-release button halfway (pg. 56).

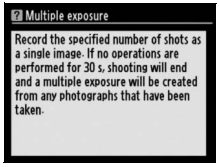
Help

If a **?** icon is displayed at the bottom left corner of the monitor, help can be displayed by pressing the **O-n** (**?**) button. A description of the currently selected option or menu will be displayed while the button is pressed. Press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the display.





O-n button



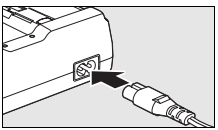
Charge the Battery

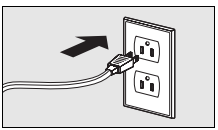
The D3 is powered by an EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion battery (supplied).

The EN-EL4a is not fully charged at shipment. To maximize shooting time, charge the battery in the supplied MH-22 quick charger before use. About two hours and twenty-five minutes are required to fully recharge the battery when no charge remains.

1 **Plug the charger in.**

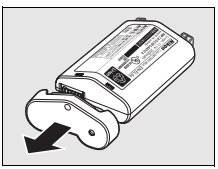
Insert the AC adapter plug into the battery charger and plug the power cable into an electrical outlet. All lamps will remain off.





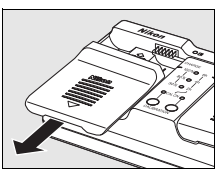
2 **Remove the terminal cover.**

Remove the terminal cover from the battery.

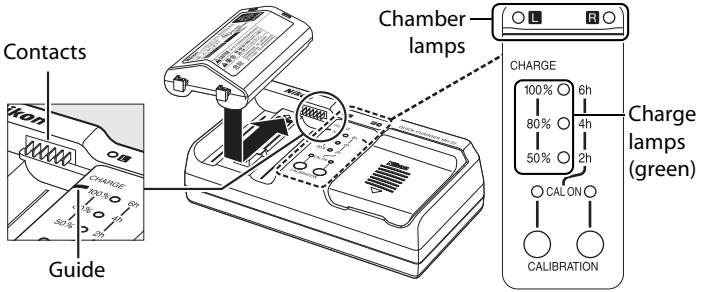


3 **Remove the contact protector.**

Remove the contact protector of the quick charger's battery chambers.



4 Charge the battery.



Insert the battery (terminals first), aligning the end of the battery with the guide and then sliding the battery in the direction indicated until it clicks into place. The chamber lamp and charge lamps will blink while the battery charges:

Charge state	Chamber lamp	Charge lamps		
		50%	80%	100%
Less than 50% of maximum capacity	☼ (blinks)	☼ (blinks)	● (off)	● (off)
50–80% of maximum capacity	☼ (blinks)	○ (glows)	☼ (blinks)	● (off)
More than 80% but less than 100% of maximum capacity	☼ (blinks)	○ (glows)	○ (glows)	☼ (blinks)
100% of maximum capacity	○ (glows)	● (off)	● (off)	● (off)

Charging is complete when the chamber lamp stops blinking and the charge lamps turn off. About two hours and twenty-five minutes are required to fully charge an exhausted battery.

5 Remove the battery when charging is complete.

Remove the battery and unplug the charger.

Calibration

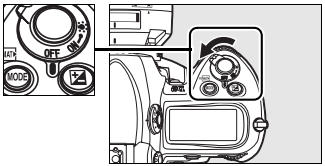
See page 433 for more information on calibration.

Insert the Battery

1 Turn the camera off.

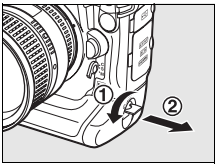
Always turn the camera off before inserting or removing batteries.

Power switch



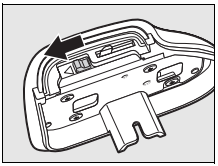
2 Remove the battery-chamber cover.

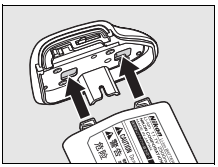
Lift the battery-chamber cover latch, turn it to the open (⊂) position (①) and remove the BL-4 battery-chamber cover (②).



3 Attach the cover to the battery.

If the battery release is positioned so that the arrow (◀) is visible, slide the battery release to cover the arrow. Insert the two projections on the battery into the matching slots in the cover and slide the battery release to reveal the arrow.





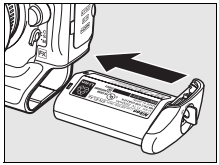
The BL-4 Battery-Chamber Cover

The battery can be charged with the BL-4 attached. To prevent dust from accumulating inside the battery chamber when the battery is not inserted, slide the battery release in the direction indicated by the arrow (◀), remove the BL-4 from the battery, and replace it on the camera.

The BL-1 battery-chamber cover for D2-series cameras can not be used.

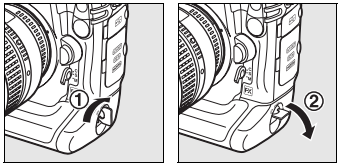
4 Insert the battery.

Insert the battery as shown at right.



5 Latch the cover.

To prevent the battery from becoming dislodged during operation, rotate the latch to the closed position and fold it down as shown at right. Be sure the cover is securely latched.



EN-EL4a Rechargeable Li-ion Batteries

The supplied EN-EL4a shares information with compatible devices, enabling the camera to show battery charge state in six levels (pg. 48). The [Battery info] option in the setup menu details battery charge, battery life, and the number of pictures taken since the battery was last charged (pg. 353). The battery can be recalibrated as necessary to ensure that battery level continues to be reported accurately (pg. 433).

The Battery and Charger

Read and follow the warnings and cautions on pages xviii–xx and 398–401 of this manual. To prevent short-circuits, replace the terminal cover when the battery is not in use.

Do not use the battery at ambient temperatures below 0°C (32°F) or above 40°C (104°F). During charging, the temperature should be in the vicinity of 5–35°C (41–95°F); for best results, charge the battery at temperatures above 20°C (68°F). Battery capacity may temporarily drop if the battery is charged at low temperatures or used at a temperature below the temperature at which it was charged. If the battery is charged at a temperature below 5°C (41°F), the battery life indicator in the [Battery info] display may show a temporary decrease.

The battery may be hot immediately after use. Wait for the battery to cool before recharging.

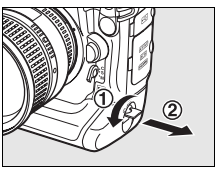
Use the charger with compatible batteries only. Unplug when not in use.

Compatible Batteries

The camera can also be used with EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion batteries.

Removing the Battery

Before removing the battery, turn the camera off and lift the battery-chamber cover latch, turn it to the open (ᔓ) position. To prevent short-circuits, replace the terminal cover when the battery is not in use.

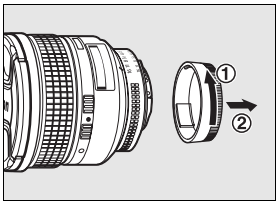


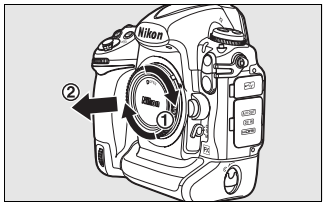
Attach a Lens

Care should be taken to prevent dust from entering the camera when the lens is removed.

1 Remove the rear lens cap and the camera body cap.

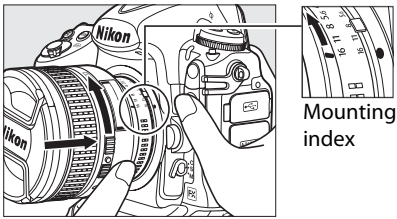
After confirming that the camera is off, remove the rear lens cap from the lens and remove the camera body cap.



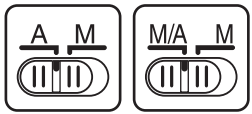


2 Attach the lens.

Keeping the mounting mark on the lens aligned with the mounting mark on the camera body, position the lens in the camera's bayonet mount. Being careful not to press the lens-release button, rotate the lens counter-clockwise until it clicks into place.

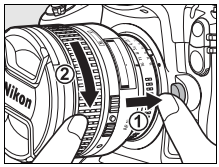


If the lens is equipped with an **A-M** or **M/A-M** switch, select **A** (autofocus) or **M/A** (autofocus with manual priority).



▮▮ *Detaching the Lens*

Be sure the camera is off when removing or exchanging lenses. To remove the lens, press and hold the lens release button while turning the lens clockwise. After removing the lens, replace the lens caps and camera body cap.

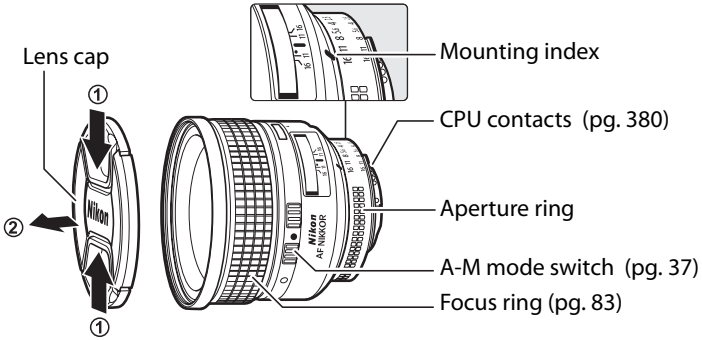


☑ CPU Lenses with Aperture Rings

In the case of CPU lenses equipped with an aperture ring (pg. 380), lock aperture at the minimum setting (highest f-number). See the lens manual for details.

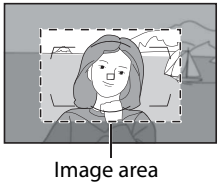
✎ Lens

An AF Nikkor 85 mm f/1.4D lens is used in this manual for illustrative purposes.



✎ Image Area

The DX format image area is automatically selected when a DX lens is attached.

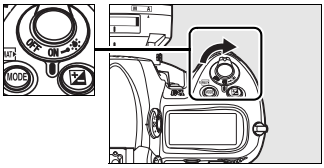


Basic Setup

The language option in the setup menu is automatically highlighted the first time menus are displayed. Choose a language and set the time and date.

1 Turn the camera on.

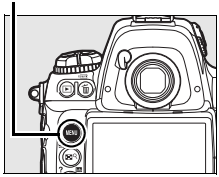
Power switch

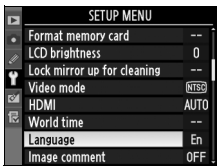


2 Select [language].

Press MENU to display the camera menus, then select [Language] in the setup menu. For information on using menus, see "Using Camera Menus" (pg. 28).

MENU button



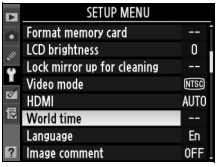


3 Select a language.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the desired language and press ⊛.

4 Select [World time].

Select [World time] and press ▶.



5 Set time zone.

A time-zone selection dialog will be displayed. Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the local time zone (the [UTC] field shows the difference between the selected time zone and Coordinated Universal Time, or UTC, in hours) and press ⊛.

6 Turn daylight saving time on or off.

Daylight saving time options will be displayed. Daylight saving time is off by default; if daylight saving time is in effect in the local time zone, press ▲ to highlight [On] and press ⊛.

7 Set the date and time.

The dialog shown at right will be displayed. Press ◀ or ▶ to select an item, ▲ or ▼ to change. Press ⊛ when the clock is set to the current date and time.

8 Set date format.

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the order in which the year, month, and day will be displayed and press ⊛.

9 Exit to shooting mode.

Press the shutter-release button halfway to exit to shooting mode.

The Clock Battery

The camera clock is powered by a separate, non-rechargeable CR1616 lithium battery with a life of about four years. When this battery is exhausted, a CLOCK icon will be displayed in the top control panel while the exposure meters are on. For information on replacing the clock battery, see page 393.

The Camera Clock

The camera clock is less accurate than most watches and household clocks. Check the clock regularly against more accurate time pieces and reset as necessary.

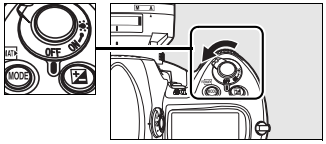
Insert a Memory Card

The camera stores photographs on CompactFlash and microdrive memory cards (available separately; pg. 389). Up to two memory cards can be inserted in the camera simultaneously. The following section describes how to insert and format a memory card.

1 Turn the camera off.

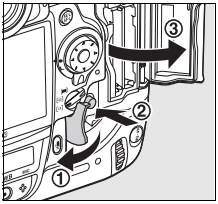
Always turn the camera off before inserting or removing memory cards.

Power switch



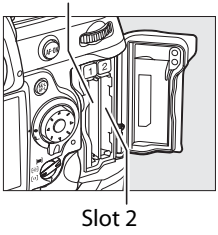
2 Open the card slot cover.

Open the door protecting the card-slot cover release button (①) and press the release button (②) to open the card slot (③).

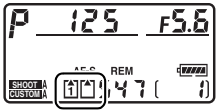


Memory Card Slots

Slot 1 is for the main card; the card in slot 2 plays a backup or secondary role. If the default setting of [Overflow] is selected for [Slot 2] (pg. 71) when two memory cards are inserted, the card in slot 2 will only be used when the card in slot 1 is full.

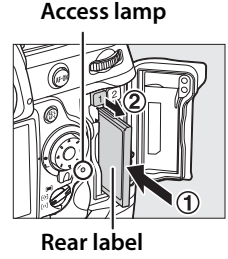


The card currently in use is indicated in the top control panel.



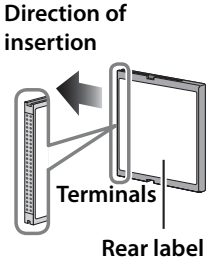
3 Insert the memory card.

Insert the first memory card in slot 1. Slot 2 should be used only if a card is already inserted in slot 1. Insert the memory card with the rear label toward the monitor (①). When the memory card is fully inserted, the eject button will pop up (②) and the green access lamp will light briefly.

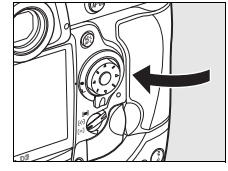


Inserting Memory Cards

Insert the memory card terminals first. Inserting the card upside down or backwards could damage the camera or the card. Check to be sure that the card is in the correct orientation.



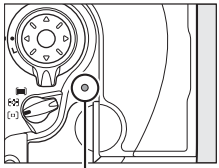
4 Close the card slot cover.



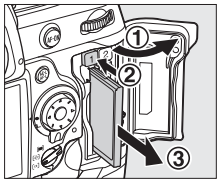
■■ *Removing Memory Cards*

1 Turn the camera off.

Confirm that the access lamp is off and turn the camera off.



2 Remove the memory card.



Open the memory card slot cover (①) and press the eject button (②) to partially eject the card (③). The memory card can then be removed by hand. Do not push on the memory card while pressing the eject button. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the camera or memory card.

☑ Memory Cards

- Memory cards may be hot after use. Observe due caution when removing memory cards from the camera.
- Memory cards that have been formatted in a computer or other device must be reformatted in the camera before they can be used for recording or playback.
- Turn the power off before inserting or removing memory cards. Do not remove memory cards from the camera, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting or while data are being recorded, deleted, or copied to a computer. Failure to observe these precautions could result in loss of data or in damage to the camera or card.
- Do not touch the card terminals with your fingers or metal objects.
- Do not bend, drop, or subject to strong physical shocks.
- Do not apply force to the card casing. Failure to observe this precaution could damage the card.
- Do not expose to water, high levels of humidity, or direct sunlight.

■ *Formatting Memory Cards*

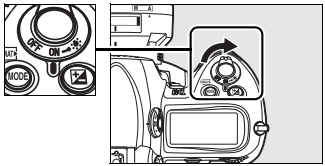
Memory cards must be formatted before first use. Format the card as described below.

☑ Formatting Memory Cards

Formatting memory cards permanently deletes any data they may contain. Be sure to copy any photographs and other data you wish to keep to a computer before proceeding (pg. 256).

1 Turn the camera on.

Power switch

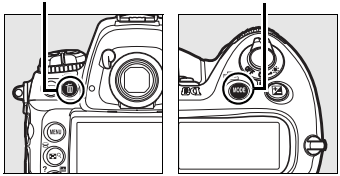


2 Press the FORMAT buttons.

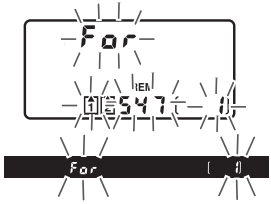
Hold the FORMAT (**MODE** and 🗑) buttons down simultaneously for approximately two seconds.

🗑 button

MODE button



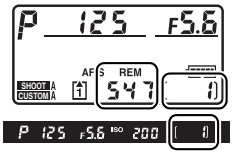
A blinking **For** will appear in the shutter-speed displays in the viewfinder and top control panel. If two memory cards are inserted, the main command dial can be used to select the card to be formatted; check that the correct card is selected in the top control panel before proceeding. To exit without formatting the memory card, press any button other than the FORMAT (**MODE** and 🗑) buttons.



3 Press the FORMAT buttons again.

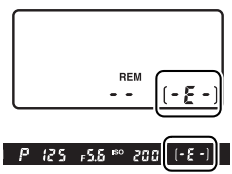
Press the FORMAT (MODE and 🗑) buttons together a second time to format the memory card. *Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source during formatting.*

When formatting is complete, the top control panel will show the number of photographs that can be recorded at current settings and the frame-count displays will show 0.



No Memory Card

If no memory card is inserted, the top control panel and viewfinder will show [- E -]. If the camera is turned off with a charged EN-EL4a battery and no memory card inserted, [- E -] will be displayed in the top control panel.



See Also

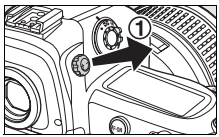
See page 345 for information on formatting memory cards using the [Format memory card] option in the setup menu.

Adjust Viewfinder Focus

The camera is equipped with diopter adjustment to accommodate individual differences in vision. Check that the display in the viewfinder is in focus before shooting.

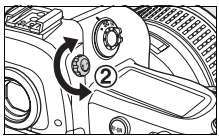
1 Lift the diopter adjustment knob.

Remove the lens cap, turn the camera on, and pull the diopter adjustment knob out (①).



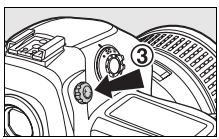
2 Focus the viewfinder.

Rotate the diopter adjustment knob (②) until the viewfinder display, and AF area brackets are in sharp focus.



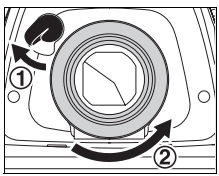
3 Replace the diopter adjustment knob.

Push the diopter adjustment knob back in (③).



Diopter Adjustment Viewfinder Lenses

Corrective lenses (available separately; pg. 385) can be used to further adjust viewfinder diopter. Before attaching a diopter-adjustment viewfinder lens, remove the DK-17 viewfinder eyepiece by closing the viewfinder shutter to release the eyepiece lock (①) and then unscrewing the eyepiece as shown at right (②).



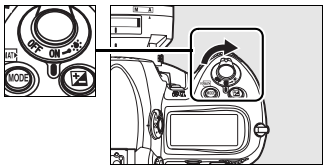
Turn the Camera On

Before taking photographs, turn the camera on and check the battery level and number of exposures remaining as described below.

1 Turn the camera on.

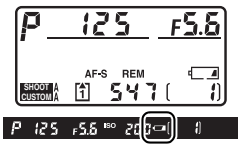
Turn the camera on. The control panels will turn on and the display in the viewfinder will light.

Power switch



2 Check the battery level.

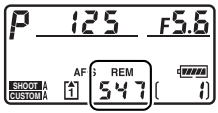
Check the battery level in the viewfinder or top control panel.

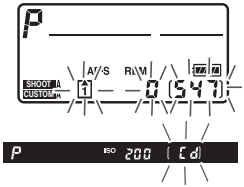


Icon*		Description
Control panel	Viewfinder	
	—	Battery fully charged.
	—	Battery partially discharged.
	—	
	—	
		Low battery. Prepare to charge battery or ready spare battery.
(blinks)	(blinks)	Shutter release disabled. Charge or exchange battery.

* No icon displayed when camera is powered by optional AC adapter.

3 Check the number of exposures remaining.

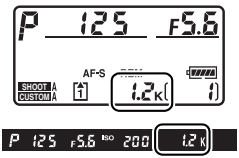




The top control panel shows the number of photographs that can be taken at current settings. When this number reaches zero, the number of exposures remaining, frame count, and [1] icon will flash in the top control panel and a flashing CARD icon will appear in the viewfinder. No further pictures can be taken until you delete pictures or insert a new memory card. You may be able to take additional pictures at lower image quality or size settings.

Large-Capacity Memory Cards

When enough memory remains on the memory card to record a thousand or more pictures at current settings, the number of exposures remaining will be shown in thousands, rounded down to the nearest hundred (e.g., if there is room for approximately 1,260 exposures, the exposure count display will show 1.2 K).

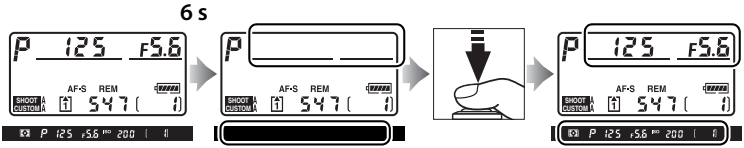


The Battery Indicator

If the segments in the top control panel battery icon blink on and off, the camera is calculating the battery charge. The battery level will be displayed in about three seconds.

Auto Meter Off

At default settings, the shutter speed and aperture displays in the top control panel and viewfinder will turn off if no operations are performed for about six seconds (auto meter off), reducing the drain on the battery. Press the shutter-release button halfway to reactivate the display in the viewfinder (pg. 56).

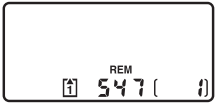


Exposure meters on | Exposure meters off | Exposure meters on

The length of time before the exposure meters turn off automatically can be adjusted using Custom Setting c2 ([Auto meter-off delay], pg. 317).

Camera Off Display

If the camera is turned off with a battery and memory card inserted, the frame count and number of exposures remaining will be displayed (some memory cards may only display this information when the camera is on).

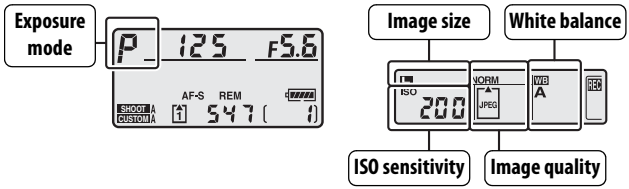


Top control panel

Adjust Camera Settings

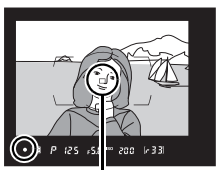
This tutorial describes how to take photos at default settings.

1 Check camera settings.



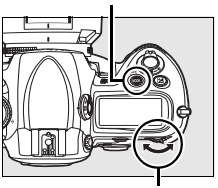
Top control panel | Rear control panel

Default settings are listed below.

Option	Default	Description	Page
Image quality	**NORM** (JPEG normal)	Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1 : 8*. Ideal for snapshots. * [Size priority] selected for [JPEG compression].	65
Image size	**L** (Large)	FX format images are 4,256 × 2,832 pixels in size.	69
ISO sensitivity	200	ISO sensitivity (digital equivalent of film speed) set to ISO 200.	108
White balance	**AUTO** (Auto)	White balance is adjusted automatically for natural colors under most types of lighting.	144
Exposure mode	***P*** (Programmed auto)	Camera automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure in most situations.	116
Focus point	Center focus point (single-point AF)	 Focus point Viewfinder focus point display is shown above. Camera focuses on subject in center focus point when shutter-release button is pressed halfway.	78

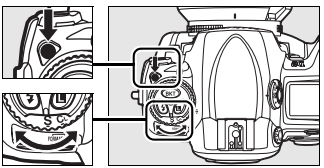
2 Choose exposure mode P.

Exposure mode **P** is selected at shipment. If another exposure mode is selected, press the **MODE** button and rotate the main command dial to select exposure mode **P**. The camera will automatically adjust shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure in most situations.



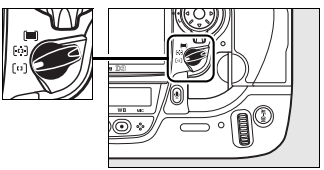
3 Choose single frame release mode.

S (single-frame release) mode is selected at shipment. If another release mode has been selected, hold the release mode dial lock release down and turn the release mode dial to **S** (single frame). At this setting, the camera will take one photograph each time the shutter-release button is pressed.



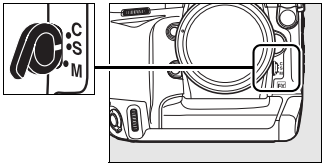
4 Choose single-point AF.

[▫] (single-point AF) is selected at shipment. If another AF-area mode has been selected, rotate the AF-area mode selector until it clicks into place pointing to [▫]. At this setting, the user can choose the focus point (at default settings, the center focus point is selected).



5 Choose single-servo autofocus.

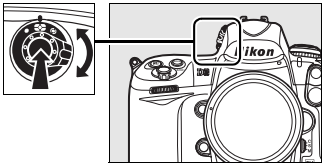
Focus-mode selector



S (single-servo autofocus) is selected at shipment. If another focus mode has been selected, rotate the focus-mode selector until it clicks into place pointing to **S** (single-servo autofocus). At this setting, the camera will automatically focus on the subject in the selected focus point when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Pictures can only be taken when the camera is in focus.

6 Choose matrix metering.

Metering selector

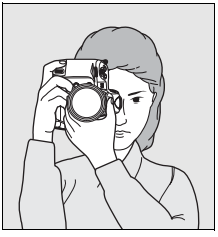


▣ (matrix metering) is selected at shipment. If another option has been selected, press the metering selector lock button and rotate the metering selector to ▣. Matrix metering uses information from the 1,005-segment RGB sensor to ensure optimal results for the entire frame.

Ready the Camera

When framing photographs in the viewfinder, hold the handgrip in your right hand and cradle the camera body or lens with your left. Keep your elbows propped lightly against your torso for support and place one foot half a pace ahead of the other to keep you upper body stable.

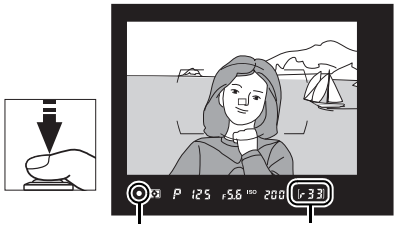
When framing photographs in portrait (tall) orientation, unlock the shutter-release button for vertical shooting (pg. 5) and hold the camera as shown at right.



For information on framing photographs in the monitor, see page 90.

Focus and Shoot

1 Press the shutter-release button halfway to focus (pg. 56).



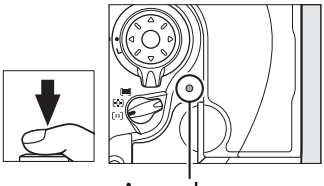
At default settings, the camera will focus on the subject in the center focus point. Frame a photo in the viewfinder with the main subject positioned in the center focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway. If the camera is able to focus, the in-focus indicator (●) will appear in the viewfinder.

Viewfinder display	Description
●	Subject in focus.
▶	Focus point is between camera and subject.
◀	Focus point is behind subject.
▶ ◀ (blinks)	Camera unable to focus on subject in focus point using autofocus.

While the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, focus will lock and the number of exposures that can be stored in the memory buffer ("▰"; pg. 88) will be shown in the viewfinder display.

For information on what to do if the camera is unable to focus using autofocus, see "Getting Good Results with Autofocus" (pg. 82).

2 Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to shoot.



Smoothly press the shutter-release-button the rest of the way down to take the picture. While the photograph is being recorded to the memory card, the access lamp next to the card slot cover will light. *Do not eject the memory card, turn the camera off, or remove or disconnect the power source until the lamp has gone out.*

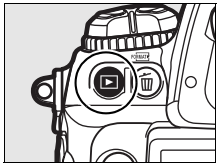
The Shutter-Release Button

The camera has a two-stage shutter-release button. The camera focuses when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. To take the photograph, press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down.

Viewing Photographs

1 Press the ▶ button.

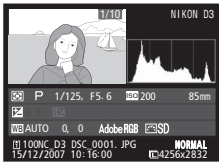
The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor.



2 View additional pictures.

Additional pictures can be displayed by pressing ◀ or ▶.

To view additional information on the current photograph, press ▲ and ▼ (pg. 231).



The card containing the current photograph is indicated by an icon as shown at right.

To end playback and return to shooting mode, press the shutter-release button halfway.

Image Review

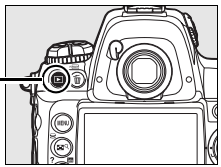
When [On] is selected for [Image review] in the playback menu (pg. 287), photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor for about 20 s (the default setting) after shooting.

Deleting Unwanted Photographs

To delete the photograph currently displayed in the monitor, press the 🗑 button. Note that photographs can not be recovered once deleted.

1 Display the photograph.

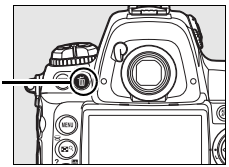
Display the photograph you wish to delete as described in "Viewing Photographs" on the previous page.



The card containing the current photograph is indicated by an icon as shown at right.

2 Delete the photograph.

Press the 🗑 button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.



Press the 🗑 button again to delete the image and return to playback. To exit without deleting the picture, press ▶.

[Delete]

To delete multiple images or to delete images from the second of two memory cards, use the [Delete] option in the playback menu (pg. 281).

Image Recording Options

This section describes how to choose image area, quality, and size and how to choose the role played by memory card slot 2.

Image Area ..... **pg. 60**

Image Quality ..... **pg. 65**

Image Size ..... **pg. 69**

Slot 2 ..... **pg. 71**

Image Area

The camera's FX format (36.0 × 23.9 mm) image sensor can be used to record pictures with an image area (picture angle) equivalent to a 35mm (135) format film camera. Image area is selected using the [Image area] option in the shooting menu. At the default setting of [Auto DX crop], the camera will automatically crop pictures to the DX picture angle when a DX format lens is attached. The [Choose image area] option can be used to select a 35mm picture angle or to crop photographs to the DX format picture angle or to a 5 : 4 aspect ratio.

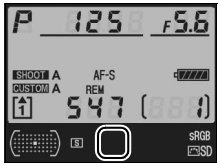
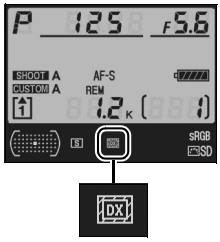
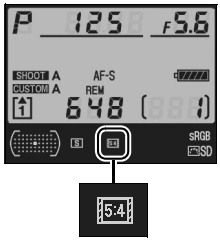
■■ *Auto DX Crop*

Choose whether to automatically select a DX crop when a DX lens is attached.

Option	Description
On (default)	Camera automatically selects DX crop when DX lens is attached.
Off	Crop selected for [Choose image area] is used.

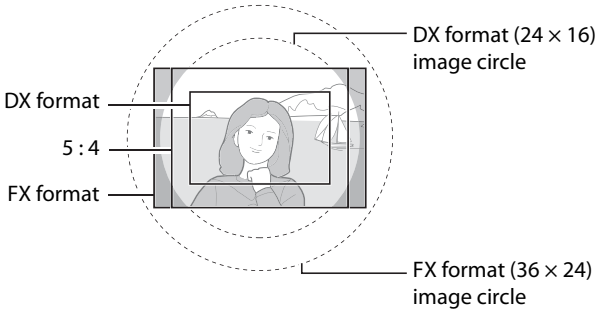
■■ *Choose Image Area*

Choose the image area used when [Off] is selected for [Auto DX crop] (pg. 63).

Option	Description
FX format (36x24)	Images are recorded in FX format using the full area of the image sensor (36.0 × 23.9 mm), producing a picture angle equivalent to a Nikkor lens on a 35mm format camera. The edges of pictures taken with DX format lenses will be blacked out.  Shooting information display
DX format (24x16)	An area at the center of the image sensor 23.5 × 15.6 mm is used to record pictures in DX format. To calculate the approximate focal length of the lens in 35mm format, multiply by 1.5. 
5:4 (30x24)	Pictures are recorded with an aspect ratio of 5 : 4 (30.0 × 23.9 mm). The edges of pictures taken with DX format lenses will be blacked out. 

DX Lenses

DX lenses are designed for use with DX format cameras and have a smaller picture angle than lenses for 35mm format cameras. If [Auto DX crop] is off and [FX format (36 × 24)] or [5 :4 (30 × 24)] is selected for [Image area] when a DX lens is attached, the edges of the image may be eclipsed. This may not be apparent in the viewfinder, but when the images are played back you may notice a drop in resolution or that the edges of the picture are blacked out.



The Viewfinder Display

The DX format and 5 :4 crops are shown below.

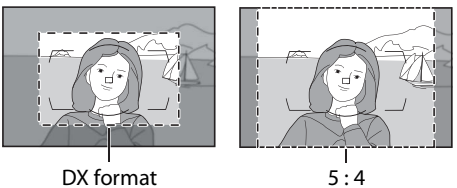
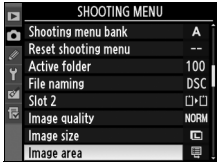


Image area can be set using the [Image area] option in the shooting menu or (at default settings) by pressing the **Fn** button and rotating the main command dial.

■ *The Image Area Menu*

1 **Select [Image area].**

Highlight [Image area] in the shooting menu (pg. 290) and press ▶.

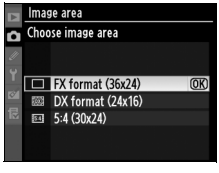


2 **Choose an option.**

Highlight [Auto DX crop] or [Choose image area] and press ▶.

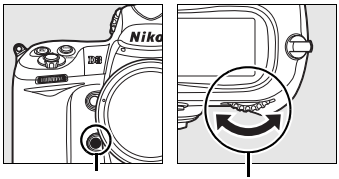
3 **Adjust settings.**

Choose an option and press ⊛. The selected crop is displayed in the viewfinder (pg. 62).



▮▮ *The Fn Button*

The image area can be selected by pressing the **Fn** button and rotating the main command dial until the desired crop is displayed in the viewfinder (pg. 62). This operation (the default option for the **Fn** button and command dials; pg. 334) can not be performed while a multiple exposure is being recorded (pg. 211).



Fn button **Main command dial**

☑ Auto DX Crop

The **Fn** button can not be used to select image area when a DX lens is attached and [Auto DX crop] is on.

✎ The Fn, Depth-of-Field Preview, and AE-L/AF-L Buttons

Changes to image area settings can be made using the **Fn** button (the default setting, see Custom Setting f4, [Assign FUNC. button], pg. 331), the depth-of-field preview button (Custom setting f5, [Assign preview button]), pg. 337), or the **AE-L/AF-L** button (Custom Setting f6, [Assign AE-L/AF-L button], pg. 338). Note that some "button press" options can not be combined with options using "+dials."

✎ Information Display (pg. 14)

At settings other than [FX format (36 × 24)], the current image area selection can be viewed by pressing the **Info** button to display shooting information in the monitor. DX is displayed when [DX format (24 × 16)] is selected and 5:4 when [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] is selected.

✎ Image Size

Image size varies with the option selected for image area.

Image Quality

The camera supports the following image quality options.

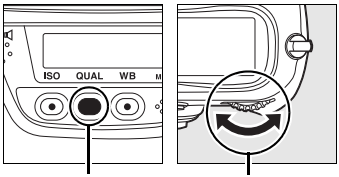
Option	File type	Description
NEF (RAW)	NEF	Raw data from the image sensor are saved directly to the memory card in Nikon Electronic Format (NEF). Use with images that will be transferred to a computer for printing or processing. Note that once transferred to a computer, NEF (RAW) images can only be viewed using compatible software such as ViewNX (supplied) or Capture NX (available separately; pg. 387).
TIFF (RGB)	TIFF (RGB)	Record uncompressed TIFF-RGB images at a bit depth of 8 bits per channel (24-bit color). TIFF is supported by a wide variety of imaging applications.
JPEG fine	JPEG	Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1:4 (fine image quality). *
JPEG normal		Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1:8 (normal image quality). *
JPEG basic		Record JPEG images at a compression ratio of roughly 1:16 (basic image quality). *
NEF (RAW)+ JPEG fine	NEF/ JPEG	Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one fine-quality JPEG image.
NEF (RAW)+ JPEG normal		Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one normal-quality JPEG image.
NEF (RAW)+ JPEG basic		Two images are recorded, one NEF (RAW) image and one basic-quality JPEG image.

* [Size priority] selected for [JPEG compression].

File Size

See page 423 for information on the number of pictures that can be recorded at different image quality and size settings.

Image quality is set by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the main command dial until the desired setting is displayed in the rear control panel.



QUAL button **Main command dial**

Rear control panel

NEF (RAW) Recording

The [NEF (RAW) recording] item in the shooting menu controls compression (pg. 68) and bit depth (pg. 68) for NEF (RAW) images.

JPEG Compression

JPEG images can be compressed for relatively uniform file size or optimal image quality. The [JPEG compression] option in the shooting menu can be used to choose the type of compression (pg. 67).

NEF (RAW)+JPEG

If only one memory card is used, only the JPEG image will be displayed when photographs taken at [NEF (RAW) + JPEG fine], [NEF (RAW) + JPEG normal], or [NEF (RAW) + JPEG basic] are viewed on the camera. Deleting the JPEG image deletes the NEF (RAW) copy. If two memory cards are inserted and [RAW Slot 1-JPEG Slot 2] is selected for Slot 2, deleting the JPEG copy from the memory card in slot 2 has no effect on the NEF (RAW) copy on the memory card in slot 1 (pg. 71).

The Image Quality Menu

Image quality can also be adjusted using the [Image quality] option in the shooting menu (pg. 290).

■■ *The JPEG Compression Menu*

The JPEG compression item in the shooting menu offers the following options for JPEG images:

Option	Description
Size priority (default)	Images are compressed to produce relatively uniform file size. Quality varies with scene recorded.
Optimal quality	Optimal image quality. File size varies with scene recorded.

■■ *The NEF (RAW) Recording Menu: Type*

The [NEF (RAW) recording] > [Type] item in the shooting menu offers the following compression options for NEF (RAW) images:

Option		Description
ON	**Lossless compressed** (default)	NEF images are compressed using a reversible algorithm, reducing file size by about 20–40% percent with no effect on image quality.
ON	**Compressed**	NEF images are compressed using a non-reversible algorithm, reducing file size by about 40–55% percent with almost no effect on image quality.
	Uncompressed	NEF images are not compressed. Recording time increases slightly.

■■ *The NEF (RAW) Recording Menu: NEF (RAW) Bit Depth*

The [NEF (RAW) recording] > [NEF (RAW) bit depth] item in the shooting menu offers the following bit-depth options for NEF (RAW) images:

Option		Description
12-bit	**12-bit** (default)	NEF (RAW) images are recorded at a bit-depth of 12 bits.
14-bit	**14-bit**	NEF (RAW) images are recorded at a bit-depth of 14 bits, producing files larger than 12-bit files but increasing the color data recorded.

Image Size

Image size is measured in pixels. Choose from **L**arge (the default option), **M**edium, or **S**mall (note that image size varies depending on the option selected for [Image area], pg. 60):

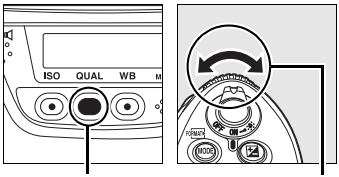
Image area	Option	Size (pixels)	Print size (cm/in.) *
FX format (36 × 24)	**L**	4,256 × 2,832	54.1 × 36.0/21.3 × 14.2
	M	3,184 × 2,120	40.4 × 26.9/15.9 × 20.6
	S	2,128 × 1,416	27.0 × 18.0/10.6 × 7.1
DX format (24 × 16)	**L**	2,784 × 1,848	35.4 × 23.5/13.9 × 9.2
	M	2,080 × 1,384	26.4 × 17.6/10.4 × 6.9
	S	1,392 × 920	17.7 × 11.7/7.0 × 4.6
5 : 4 (30 × 24)	**L**	3,552 × 2,832	45.1 × 36.0/17.8 × 14.2
	M	2,656 × 2,120	33.7 × 26.9/13.3 × 20.6
	S	1,776 × 1,416	22.6 × 18.0/8.9 × 7.1

* Approximate size when printed at 200 dpi. Print size in inches equals image size in pixels divided by printer resolution in **d**ots **p**er **i**nch (dpi; 1 inch = approximately 2.54 cm). Print size decreases as printer resolution increases.

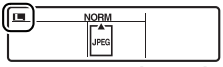
NEF (RAW) Images

Note that the option selected for image size does not affect the size of NEF (RAW) images. When opened in software such as Capture NX (available separately) or ViewNX (supplied), NEF (RAW) images have the dimensions given for large ([L]-size) images in the table above.

Image size can be set by pressing the **QUAL** button and rotating the sub-command dial until the desired option is displayed in the rear control panel.



QUAL button **Sub-command dial**



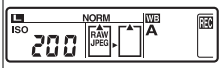
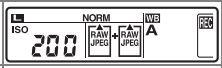
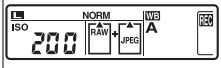
Rear control panel

The Image Size Menu

Image size can also be adjusted using the [Image size] option in the shooting menu (pg. 290).

Slot 2

Use the [Slot 2] option in the shooting menu (pg. 290) to choose the role played by the memory card in slot 2.

Option	Rear control panel	Description
Overflow (default)		The memory card in slot 2 is used to record photographs when the memory card in slot 1 is full.
Backup		Each photograph is recorded to both memory cards.
RAW Slot 1-JPEG Slot 2		At image quality settings of NEF (RAW)+JPEG, the NEF (RAW) image is recorded to the memory card in slot 1, the JPEG image to the memory card in slot 2. At other image qualities, this option is the same as [Backup].

Backup/RAW Slot 1-JPEG Slot 2

When the above options are selected, the shutter-release will be disabled when either of the memory cards is full. The viewfinder and top control panel show the number of exposures remaining on the card with the least amount of available memory. Voice memos (pg. 250) are appended to the copy recorded to the memory card in slot 1.

Focus

– Controlling How the Camera Focuses

This section describes the options that control how your camera focuses.

Focus Mode .....pg. 74

AF-Area Mode .....pg. 76

Focus Point Selection .....pg. 78

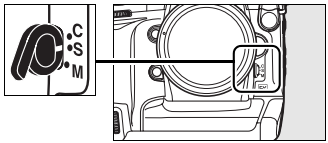
Focus Lock .....pg. 80

Manual Focus .....pg. 83

Focus Mode

Focus mode is controlled by the focus-mode selector on the front of the camera. There are two *autofocus* (AF) modes, in which the camera focuses automatically when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, and one *manual focus* mode, in which focus must be adjusted manually using the focusing ring on the lens:

Focus-mode selector

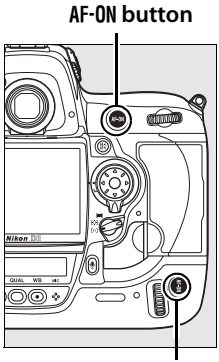


Option	Description
S Single-servo AF	Camera focuses when shutter-release button is pressed halfway. Focus locks when in-focus indicator (●) appears in viewfinder, and remains locked while shutter-release button is pressed halfway (*focus lock*). At default settings, shutter can only be released when in-focus indicator is displayed (*focus priority*).
C Continuous-servo AF	Camera focuses continuously while shutter-release button is pressed halfway. If subject moves, camera will engage *predictive focus tracking* (pg. 75) to predict final distance to subject and adjust focus as necessary. At default settings, shutter can be released whether or not subject is in focus (*release priority*).
M Manual (pg. 83)	Camera does not focus automatically; focus must be adjusted manually using the lens focusing ring. If maximum aperture of lens is f/5.6 or faster, viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm focus (*electronic range finding*; pg. 84), but photographs can be taken at any time, whether or not subject is in focus.

Choose single-servo AF for landscapes and other stationary subjects. Continuous-servo AF may be a better choice with erratically-moving subjects. Manual focus is recommended when the camera is unable to focus using autofocus.

The AF-ON Buttons

For the purpose of focusing the camera, pressing either of the **AF-ON** buttons has the same effect as pressing the shutter-release button halfway.



Predictive Focus Tracking

In continuous-servo AF, the camera will initiate predictive focus tracking if the subject moves toward or away from the camera while the shutter-release button is pressed halfway or either of the **AF-ON** buttons is pressed. This allows the camera to track focus while attempting to predict where the subject will be when the shutter is released.

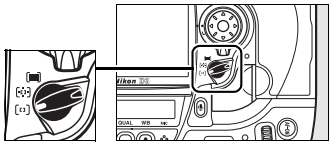
See Also

For information on using focus priority in continuous-servo AF, see Custom Setting a1 ([AF-C priority selection], pg. 304). For information on using release priority in single-servo AF, see Custom Setting a2 ([AF-S priority selection], pg. 305). For information on preventing the camera from focusing when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, see Custom Setting a5 ([AF activation], pg. 308).

AF-Area Mode

AF-area mode determines how the focus point is selected in autofocus mode (pg. 74). To select the AF-area mode, rotate the AF-area mode selector. The following options are available:

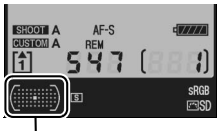
AF-area mode selector



Mode	Description
[▪] Single-point AF	User selects focus point manually; camera focuses on subject in selected focus point only. Use for relatively static compositions with subjects that will stay in selected focus point.
[▪] Dynamic-area AF	• **In continuous-servo AF** (pg. 74), user selects focus point manually; if subject briefly leaves selected focus point, camera will focus based on information from surrounding points. Number of focus points used can be selected from 9, 21, and 51 using Custom Setting a3 ([Dynamic AF area], pg. 306). If [51 points (3D-tracking)] is selected for Custom Setting a3, focus point will be selected automatically using 3D-tracking. • **In single-servo AF** (pg. 74), user selects focus point manually; camera focuses on subject in selected focus point only.
[▪] Auto-area AF	Camera automatically detects subject and selects focus point. If type G or D lens is used, camera can distinguish human subjects from background for improved subject detection. In single-servo AF, active focus points are highlighted for about one second after camera focuses. Active focus points are not displayed in continuous-servo AF.

AF-Area Mode

AF-area mode is shown in the shooting information display when the INFO button is pressed.



AF-area mode indicator

AF-area mode			Information display
Single-point AF			
Dynamic-area AF*	Custom Setting a3 ([Dynamic AF area], pg. 306)	9 points (default)	
		21 points	
		51 points	
		51 points (3D-tracking)	3D
Auto-area AF			AUTO

* Only active focus point is displayed in the viewfinder. Remaining focus points provide information to assist focus operation.

Manual Focus

Single-point AF is automatically selected when manual focus is used.

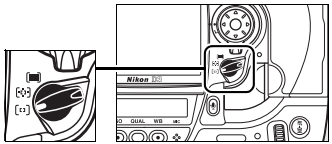
See Also

For information on the settings available in dynamic-area AF, see Custom Setting a3 ([Dynamic AF area], pg. 306). For information on adjusting how long the camera waits before refocusing when an object moves in front of the camera, see Custom Setting a4 ([Focus tracking with lock-on], pg. 308).

Focus Point Selection

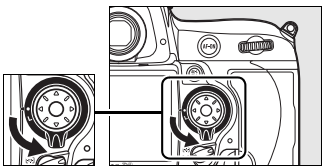
The camera offers a choice of 51 focus points that together cover a wide area of the frame. The focus point can be selected manually, allowing photographs to be composed the main subject positioned almost anywhere in the frame (single-point and dynamic-area AF), or automatically (auto-area AF; note that manual focus point detection is not available when auto-area AF is selected). To select the focus point manually:

AF-area mode selector



1 Rotate the focus selector lock to ●.

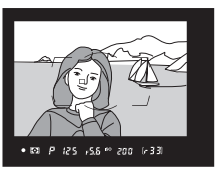
This allows the multi selector to be used to select the focus point.



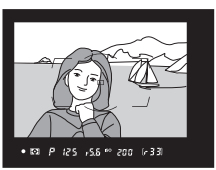
Focus selector lock

2 Select the focus point.

Use the multi selector to select the focus point. At default settings, the center focus point can be selected by pressing the center of the multi selector.



The focus selector lock can be rotated to the locked (**L**) position following selection to prevent the selected focus point from changing when the multi selector is pressed.



Portrait (Tall-Orientation) Photographs

When framing shots in portrait ("tall") orientation, use the command dials to select the focus area. For more information, see Custom Setting f4 ([Assign FUNC. button], pg. 335).

See Also

For information on choosing when the focus point is illuminated, see Custom Setting a6 ([Focus point illumination], pg. 309). For information on setting focus-point selection to "wrap around," see Custom Setting a7 ([Focus point wrap-around], pg. 310). For information on choosing the number of focus points that can be selected using the multi selector, see Custom Setting a8 ([AF point selection], pg. 310). For information on choosing the role of the **AF-ON** button for vertical shooting, see Custom Setting a10 ([Vertical AF-ON button], pg. 312). For information on changing the role of the multi selector center button, see Custom Setting f1 ([Multi selector center button], pg. 330).

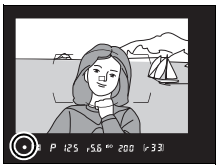
Focus Lock

Focus lock can be used to change the composition after focusing, making it possible to focus on a subject that will not be in a focus point in the final composition. It can also be used when the autofocus system is unable to focus (pg. 82).

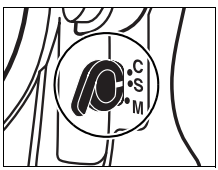
1 Focus.

Position the subject in the selected focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway to initiate focus.

2 Check that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.



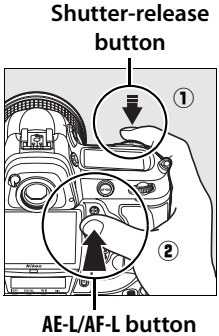
Single-servo AF



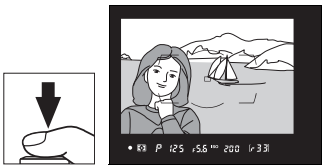
Focus will lock automatically when the in-focus indicator appears, and remain locked until you remove your finger from the shutter-release button. Focus can also be locked by pressing the **AE-L/AF-L** button (see following page).

Continuous-servo AF

Press the **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock both focus and exposure (an **AE-L** icon appears in the viewfinder, see page 129). Focus and exposure will remain locked while the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed, even if you later remove your finger from the shutter-release button.



3 Recompose the photograph and shoot.



Focus will remain locked between shots as long as the shutter-release button is kept pressed halfway, allowing several photographs in succession to be taken at the same focus setting. Focus will also remain locked between shots while the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed.

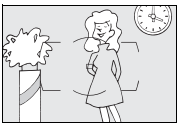
Do not change the distance between the camera and the subject while focus lock is in effect. If the subject moves, focus again at the new distance.

See Also

For information on choosing the role played by the **AE-L/AF-L** button, see Custom Setting f6 ([Assign AE-L/AF-L button], pg. 338).

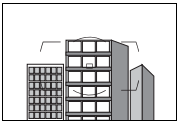
Getting Good Results with Autofocus

Autofocus does not perform well under the conditions listed below. The shutter release may be disabled if the camera is unable to focus under these conditions, or the in-focus indicator (●) may be displayed, allowing the shutter to be released even when the subject is not in focus. In these cases, use manual focus (pg. 83) or use focus lock (pg. 80) to focus on another subject at the same distance and then recompose the photograph.

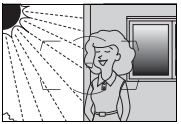


There is little or no contrast between the subject and the background
Example: subject is the same color as the background.

The focus point contains objects at different distances from the camera
Example: subject is inside a cage.

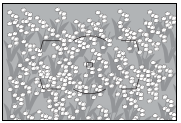


The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns
Example: a row of windows in a skyscraper.



The focus point contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness
Example: subject is half in the shade.

Background objects appear larger than the subject
Example: a building is in the frame behind the subject.

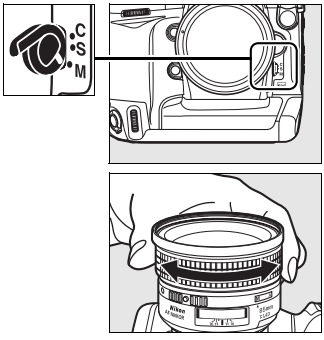


The subject contains many fine details
Example: a field of flowers or other subjects that are small or lack variation in brightness.

Manual Focus

Manual focus is available for lenses that do not support autofocus (non-AF Nikkor lenses) or when the autofocus does not produce the desired results (pg. 82). To focus manually, set the focus-mode selector to **M** and adjust the lens focusing ring until the image displayed on the clear matte field in the viewfinder is in focus. Photographs can be taken at any time, even when the image is not in focus.

Focus-mode selector

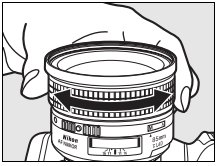


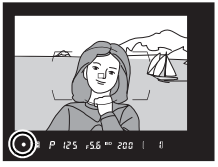
A-M Selection/Autofocus with Manual Priority

If the lens supports A-M selection, set the lens A-M switch to M (manual). If the lens supports M/A (autofocus with manual priority), focus can be adjusted manually**,** regardless of the mode selected with the lens. See the documentation provided with your lens for details.

The Electronic Rangefinder

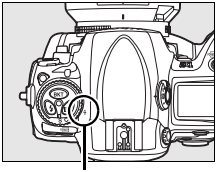
If the lens has a maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster, the viewfinder focus indicator can be used to confirm whether the subject in the selected focus point is in focus (the focus point can be selected from any of the 51 focus points). After positioning the subject in the selected focus point, press the shutter-release button halfway and rotate the lens focusing ring until the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed (pg. 55). Note that with the subjects listed on page 82, the in-focus indicator may sometimes be displayed when the subject is not in focus; confirm focus in the viewfinder before shooting.





Focal Plane Position

To determine the distance between your subject and the camera, measure from the focal plane mark (⊖) on the camera body. The distance between the lens mounting flange and the focal plane is 46.5 mm (1.83 in.).



Focal plane mark

Release Mode

– *Single Frame, Continuous, Live View, Self-Timer, or Mirror Up*

Release mode determines how the camera takes photographs: one at a time, in a continuous sequence, with the view through the lens displayed in the monitor, with a timed shutter-release delay, or with the mirror raised to enhance shutter response and minimize vibration.

Choosing a Release Mode..... pg. 86

Continuous Mode..... pg. 88

Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View)..... pg. 90

Self-Timer Mode ..... pg. 103

Mirror up Mode..... pg. 105

Choosing a Release Mode

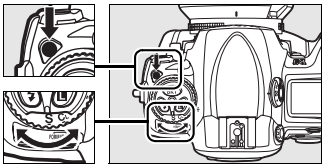
The camera supports the following release modes:

Mode	Description
S Single frame	Camera takes one photograph each time shutter-release button is pressed.
CL Continuous low speed	While shutter-release button is held down, 1–9 frames per second *.
CH Continuous high speed	While shutter-release button is held down, camera records up to 9 frames per second * (9–11 fps when [DX format (24 × 16)] is selected for [Image area]; see page 60).
Live view	Frame pictures in monitor (pg. 90). Recommended at high or low angles or in other situations in which viewfinder is hard to use or when enlarged view in monitor can assist in obtaining very precise focus.
Self-timer	Use self-timer for self-portraits or to reduce blurring caused by camera shake (pg. 103).
MUP Mirror up	Choose this mode to minimize camera shake in telephoto or close-up photography or in other situations in which the slightest camera movement can result in blurred photographs (pg. 105).

* Average frame rate with continuous-servo AF, manual or shutter-priority auto exposure, a shutter speed of $^1/_{250}$ s or faster, remaining settings other than Custom Setting d2 (pg. 320) at default values, and memory remaining in memory buffer.

To choose a release mode, press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to the desired setting.

Release mode dial lock release



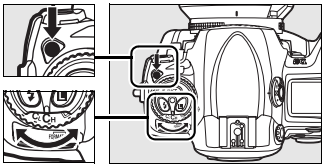
Release mode dial

Continuous Mode

To take pictures in **CH** (continuous high speed) and **CL** (continuous low speed) modes:

1 Select CH or CL mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to **CH** or **CL**.



Release mode dial

2 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

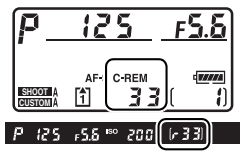
While the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down, pictures will be taken at the frame rate selected for Custom Setting d2 ([Shooting speed], pg. 320).

Continuous High Speed

In continuous high speed mode, the maximum frame rate for FX (36 × 24) format and 5 : 4 (30 × 24) images is 9 fps. The maximum frame rate for DX (24 × 16) format images can be chosen from 9, 10, and 11 fps using Custom Setting d2 ([Shooting speed], pg. 320) > [Continuous high-speed] (note that at 10 and 11 fps, focus will be fixed at the value for the first shot in each burst and when poorly lit, exposure will also be fixed at the value for the first shot).

Buffer Size

The approximate number of images that can be stored in the memory buffer at current settings is shown in the exposure-count displays in the viewfinder and top control panel while the shutter-release button is pressed. The illustration at right shows the display when space remains in the buffer for about 33 pictures. The displays show "99" when space remains for more than 99 pictures.



The Memory Buffer

The camera is equipped with a memory buffer for temporary storage, allowing shooting to continue while photographs are being saved to the memory card. Up to 130 photographs can be taken in succession; note, however, that frame rate will drop when the buffer is full. In rare cases, frame rate may also drop when a microdrive memory card is used.

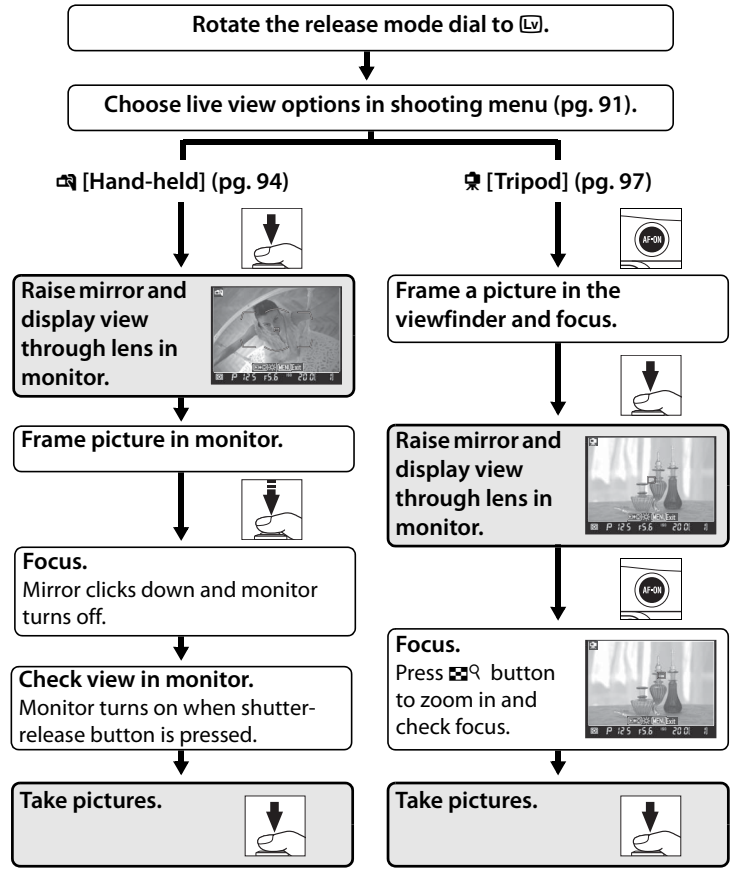
While photographs are being recorded to the memory card, the access lamp next to the memory card slot will light. Depending on the number of the images in the buffer, recording may take from a few seconds to a few minutes. *Do not remove the memory card or remove or disconnect the power source until the access lamp has gone out*. If the camera is switched off while data remain in the buffer, the power will not turn off until all images in the buffer have been recorded. If the battery is exhausted while images remain in the buffer, the shutter release will be disabled and the images transferred to the memory card.

See Also

For information on choosing the maximum number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst, see Custom Setting d3 ([Max. continuous release], pg. 320). For information on the number of pictures that can be taken in a single burst, see page 423.

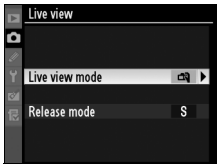
Framing Pictures in the Monitor (Live View)

Select live view (Lv) mode to frame pictures in the monitor.



Live View Options

Before taking pictures using live view, rotate the mode dial to Lv (live view) and choose a live view mode and the release mode that will be used while the camera is in live view mode. The following live view modes are available:



Option	Description
Hand-held (default)	Choose when taking hand-held shots of moving subjects, or when framing photographs at angles that make it difficult to use the viewfinder (pg. 94). Camera focuses normally using phase-detection autofocus.
Tripod	Choose when the camera is mounted on a tripod. View can be enlarged in monitor for precise focus, making this mode suitable for static subjects (pg. 98). Autofocus can be used to compose photographs with subject positioned at any point in the frame without recomposing photograph. Camera focuses using contrast-detect autofocus.

Phase-Detection Versus Contrast-Detect AF

The camera normally uses phase-detection autofocus, in which focus is adjusted based on data from a special focusing sensor. When [Tripod] is selected in live view, however, the camera uses contrast-detect autofocus, in which the camera analyses the data from the image sensor and adjusts focus to produce the greatest contrast. Contrast-detect autofocus takes longer than phase-detection autofocus.

Release mode can be chosen from the following options:

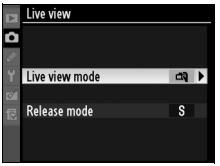
Option		Description
S	**Single frame** (default)	Camera takes one photograph each time shutter-release button is pressed.
CL	**Continuous low-speed**	While shutter-release button is held down, camera records photographs in continuous low speed or continuous high speed mode (pg. 88).
CH	**Continuous high-speed**	

1 Select [Live view].

In the shooting menu (pg. 290), highlight [Live view] and press ▶.

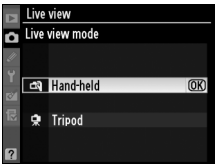
2 Select [Live view mode].

Highlight [Live view mode] and press ▶.



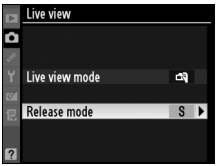
3 Select a live view mode.

Highlight the desired mode and press ⓚ to return to the live view menu.



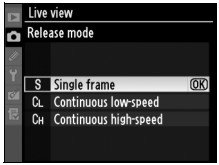
4 Select [Release mode].

Highlight [Release mode] and press ▶.



5 Select a release mode.

Highlight the release mode that will be during live view and press ⊛.



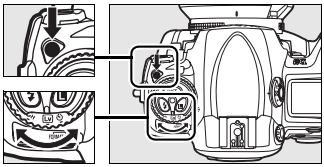
6 Exit to shooting mode.

Press the shutter-release button halfway to exit the menus and return to shooting mode.

Hand-Held Mode

1 Select live view mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to LV.



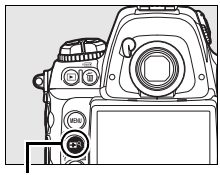
Release mode dial

2 Press the shutter-release button all the way down.

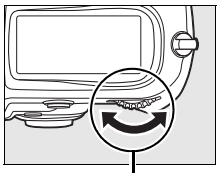
The mirror will be raised and the view through the lens will be displayed in the camera monitor instead of the viewfinder (for improved focus, pause briefly with the shutter-release button pressed halfway before pressing it the rest of the way down). To exit without taking a picture, rotate the release mode dial to another setting or press MENU.

3 Frame a picture in the monitor.

To magnify the view in the monitor up to 13 ×, press the ⊡Q button while rotating the main command dial.



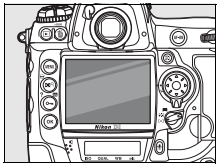
⊡Q **button**



Main command dial

While the view through the lens is zoomed in, a navigation window will appear in the bottom right corner of the display. Use the multi selector to scroll within the AF area brackets.

4 Focus.



Autofocus (focus mode **S** or **C**): Press the shutter-release button halfway or press an **AF-ON** button. The camera will focus normally and set exposure. Note that the mirror will click back into place while either button is pressed, temporarily interrupting live view. Live view is restored when the button is released. The focus point can be selected using the multi selector.

Manual focus (focus mode **M**; pg. 83): Focus using the lens focusing ring. The focus point for electronic range finding can be selected using the multi selector.

5 Take the picture.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to reset focus and exposure and take the picture. If continuous high speed or continuous low speed is selected for [Release mode], the monitor will turn off while the shutter-release button is pressed. The frame advance rate for continuous mode is the same as that selected for standard shooting.

No Picture

After shooting, play the picture back in the monitor to ensure that the photograph has been recorded. Note that the sound the mirror makes when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway or an **AF-ON** button is pressed can be mistaken for the sound of the shutter, and that pressing the shutter-release button all the way down when the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF will end live view without a photograph being recorded.

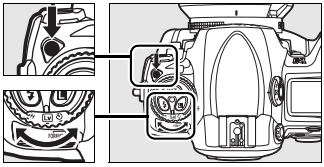
Tripod Mode

1 Ready the camera.

Mount the camera on a tripod or place it on a stable, level surface.

2 Select live view mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to Lv.

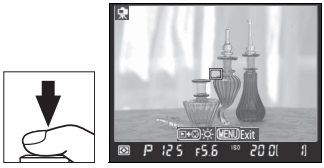


Release mode dial

3 Frame a picture in the viewfinder.

Frame a picture in the viewfinder and select a focus point using the multi selector, then press an **AF-ON** button. The camera will focus normally and set exposure. *Note that the camera can NOT be focused by pressing the shutter-release button halfway.*

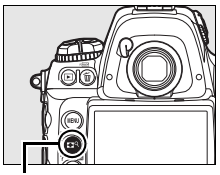
4 Press the shutter-release button all the way down.



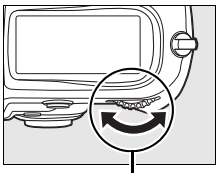
The mirror will be raised and the view through the lens will be displayed in the camera monitor. The subject will no longer be visible in the viewfinder. To exit without taking a picture, rotate the release mode dial to another setting or press **MENU**.

5 Check the view in the monitor.

To magnify the view in the monitor up to 13 × and check focus, press the ⊡🔍 button while rotating the main command dial.



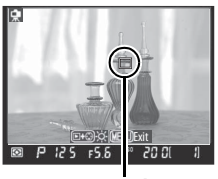
⊡🔍 **button**



Main command dial

While the view through the lens is zoomed in, a navigation window will appear in the bottom right corner of the display. Use the multi selector to scroll to areas of the frame not visible in the monitor.

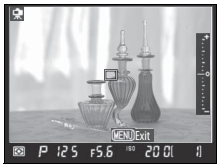
Autofocus (focus mode **S** or **C**): In tripod mode, the focus point for contrast-detect autofocus can be moved to any point in the frame using the multi selector. To focus using contrast-detect autofocus, press an **AF-ON** button. The focus point will blink green and the monitor may brighten while the camera focuses. If the camera is able to focus using contrast-detect autofocus, the focus point will be displayed in green; if the camera is unable to focus, the focus point will blink red.



Contrast-detect AF point

Manual focus (focus mode **M**; pg. 83): Use zoom for precise focus.

To preview exposure at current settings, press ⊛. In exposure modes other than M, exposure can be adjusted by pressing the ⊠ button and rotating the main command dial (note that while exposure compensation can be adjusted by ±5 EV, only values between –3 and +3 EV can be previewed in the monitor).



Exposure Preview

Matrix metering is used to set exposure. Exposure can not be previewed when an optional flash unit is attached, bracketing is in effect (pg. 134), active D-lighting is on (pg. 185), or shutter speed is set to bulb or "x 250" (flash sync speed).

6 Take the picture.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to take the picture. If continuous high speed or continuous low speed is selected for [Release mode], the monitor will turn off while the shutter-release button is pressed. The frame advance rate for continuous mode is the same as that selected for standard shooting.

Contrast-Detect Autofocus

The camera will not continue to adjust focus while a **AF-ON** button is pressed in continuous-servo autofocus mode. In both single-servo and continuous-servo autofocus modes, the shutter can be released even when the camera is not in focus.

Focusing with Contrast-Detect Autofocus

Contrast-detect autofocus will take longer than normal (phase-detection) autofocus. In the following situations, the camera may be unable to focus using contrast-detect autofocus:

- The camera is not mounted on a tripod
- The subject contains lines parallel to the long edges of the frame
- The subject lacks contrast
- The subject in the focus point contains areas of sharply contrasting brightness, or the subject is lit by spot lighting or by a neon sign or other light source that changes in brightness
- A cross (star) filter or other special filter is used
- The subject appears smaller than the focus point
- The subject is dominated by regular geometric patterns (e.g., windows in a skyscraper)
- The subject is moving

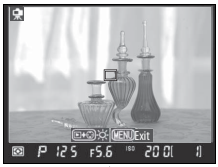
Note that the focus point may sometimes be displayed in green when the camera is unable to focus.

Use an AF-S lens. The desired results may not be achieved with other lenses or teleconverters.

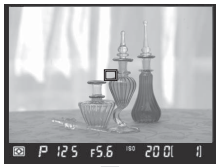
The Shooting Information Display

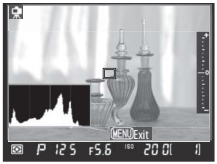
To hide or display indicators in the monitor in live view mode, press the info button.

Shooting information display

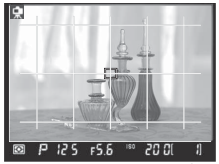


Shooting information off





Shooting info + histogram [1, 2]



Framing guides [2]

1 Only displayed during exposure preview (tripod mode; pg. 99).
2 Not displayed when view through lens is zoomed in.

Monitor Brightness

Monitor brightness can be adjusted by pressing the ▶ button while the view through the monitor is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to adjust brightness (note that monitor brightness has no effect on pictures taken in live view mode). To return to live view, release the ▶ button. Monitor brightness can not be adjusted during exposure preview (pg. 99).

HDMI

When the camera is attached to an HDMI video device, the camera monitor will turn off and the video device will display the view through the lens as shown at right.

Remote Cords

If the shutter-release button on a remote cord (available separately; see pg. 388) is pressed halfway for over a second in tripod mode, it will activate contrast-detect autofocus. If the remote cord shutter-release button is pressed all the way down without focusing, focus will not be adjusted before the picture is taken.

Shooting in Live View Mode

Although they will not appear in the final picture, banding or distortion may be visible in the monitor under fluorescent, mercury vapor, or sodium lamps or if the camera is panned horizontally or an object moves at high speed through frame. Bright light sources may leave after-images in the monitor when the camera is panned. When shooting in live view mode, avoid pointing the camera at the sun or other strong light sources. Failure to observe this precaution could result in damage to the camera's internal circuitry.

Live view shooting ends automatically if the lens is removed.

Live view mode can be used for up to an hour. Note, however, that when used in live view mode for extended periods, the camera may become noticeably warm and the temperature of its internal circuits may rise, resulting in image noise and unusual colors. To prevent damage to the camera's internal circuits, live view shooting will end automatically before the camera overheats. A count-down display will appear in the monitor 30 s before shooting ends. At high ambient temperatures, this display may appear immediately when live view mode is selected.

In exposure modes other than manual, close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter after focusing. This prevents light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure.

Some noise may be audible when zoom lenses are zoomed in or out or shutter speed is changed in exposure mode **P** or **S**.

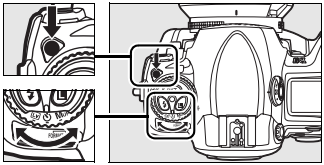
To reduce blur in tripod mode, choose [On] for Custom Setting d8 ([Exposure delay mode], pg. 324).

Self-Timer Mode

The self-timer can be used to reduce camera shake or for self-portraits. To use the self-timer, mount the camera on a tripod (recommended) or place the camera on a stable, level surface and follow the steps below:

1 Select self-timer mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to ⏲.

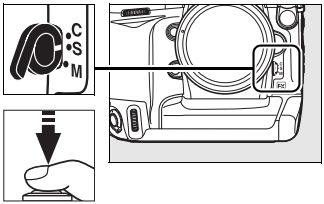


Release mode dial

2 Frame the photograph and focus.

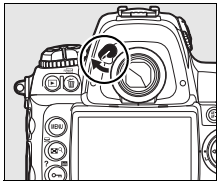
In single-servo autofocus (pg. 74), photographs can only be taken if the in-focus (●) indicator appears in the viewfinder.

Focus-mode selector



Close the Viewfinder Eyepiece Shutter

In exposure modes other than manual, close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter after focusing. This prevents light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure.



3 Start the timer.

Press the shutter-release button all the way down to start the timer. The self-timer lamp will start to blink, stopping two seconds before the photograph is taken.

To turn the self-timer off before a photograph is taken, turn the release mode dial to another setting.

bulb

In self-timer mode, a shutter speed of **bulb** is equivalent to approximately 1/5 s.

See Also

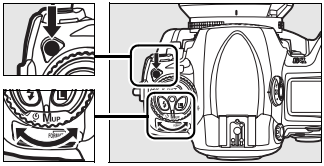
For information on changing the timer duration, see Custom Setting c3 ([Self-timer delay], pg. 318). For information on setting a beep to sound during the timer count-down, see Custom Setting d1 ([Beep], pg. 319).

Mirror up Mode

Choose this mode to minimize blurring caused by camera movement when the mirror is raised. Use of a tripod is recommended.

1 Select mirror up mode.

Press the release mode dial lock release and turn the release mode dial to **MUP**.



Release mode dial

2 Raise the mirror.

Frame the picture, focus, and then press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to raise the mirror.

Using the Viewfinder

Note that autofocus, metering, and framing can not be confirmed in the viewfinder while mirror is raised.

3 Take a picture.

Press the shutter-release button all the way down again to take a picture. To prevent blurring caused by camera movement, press the shutter-release button smoothly or use an optional remote cord (pg. 388). The mirror lowers when shooting ends.

Mirror up Mode

A picture will be taken automatically if no operations are performed for about 30 s after the mirror is raised.

ISO

ISO Sensitivity

– Reacting Faster to Light

"ISO sensitivity" is the digital equivalent of film speed. The higher the ISO sensitivity, the less light needed to make an exposure, allowing higher shutter speeds or smaller apertures. This chapter describes how to set ISO sensitivity manually and automatically.

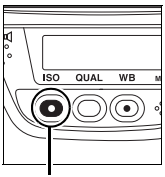
Choosing ISO Sensitivity Manually..... pg. 108

Auto ISO Sensitivity Control..... pg. 110

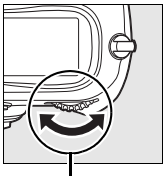
Choosing ISO Sensitivity Manually

ISO sensitivity can be set to values between ISO 200 and ISO 6400 in steps equivalent to 1/3 EV. Settings of from about 0.3–1 EV below ISO 200 and 0.3–2 EV above ISO 6400 are also available for special situations.

ISO sensitivity can be adjusted by pressing the **ISO** button and rotating the main command dial until the desired setting is displayed in the control panels or viewfinder.



ISO button



Main command dial

Top control panel

Rear control panel

Viewfinder

ISO sensitivity: 6400

The ISO Sensitivity Menu

ISO sensitivity can also be adjusted using the [ISO sensitivity] option in the shooting menu (pg. 290).

ISO Sensitivity Settings

The settings available depend on the option selected for Custom Setting b1 ([ISO sensitivity step value], pg. 313).

Custom Setting b1 (ISO sensitivity step value)	ISO sensitivity settings available
1/3 step (default)	LO 1, LO 0.7, LO 0.3, 200, 250, 320, 400, 500, 640, 800, 1000, 1250, 1600, 2000, 2500, 3200, 4000, 5000, 6400, HI 0.3, HI 0.7, HI 1, HI 2
1/2 step	LO 1, LO 0.5, 200, 280, 400, 560, 800, 1100, 1600, 2200, 3200, 4500, 6400, HI 0.5, HI 1, HI 2
1 step	LO 1, 200, 400, 800, 1600, 3200, 6400, HI 1, HI 2

***** If possible, the current ISO sensitivity setting is maintained when the step value is changed. If the current ISO sensitivity setting is not available at the new step value, ISO sensitivity will be rounded up to the nearest available setting.

HI 0.3–HI 2

The settings [HI 0.3] through [HI 2] correspond to ISO sensitivities 0.3–2 EV over ISO 6400 (ISO 8000–25600 equivalent). Pictures taken at these settings are more likely to be subject to noise and color distortion.

LO 0.3–LO 1

The settings [LO 0.3] through [LO 1] correspond to ISO sensitivities 0.3–1 EV below ISO 200 (ISO 160–100 equivalent). Use for larger apertures when lighting is bright. Contrast is slightly lower than normal; in most cases, ISO sensitivities of ISO 200 or above are recommended.

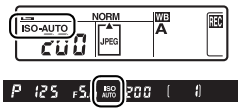
See Also

For information on Custom Setting b1 ([ISO sensitivity step value], pg. 313). For information using the [High ISO NR] option in the shooting menu to reduce noise at high ISO sensitivities, see page 299.

Auto ISO Sensitivity Control

If [Off] (the default setting) is chosen for the [ISO sensitivity auto control] option in the shooting menu, ISO sensitivity will remain fixed at the value selected by the user (see page 108). If [On] is chosen, ISO sensitivity will automatically be adjusted if optimal exposure can not be achieved at the value selected by the user (flash level is adjusted appropriately). The maximum value for auto ISO sensitivity can be selected using the [Maximum sensitivity] option in the [ISO sensitivity auto control] menu (the minimum value for auto ISO sensitivity is automatically set to ISO 200). In exposure modes **P** and **A**, sensitivity will only be adjusted if underexposure would result at the shutter speed selected for [Minimum shutter speed]. Slower shutter speeds may be used if optimum exposure can not be achieved at the ISO sensitivity value selected for [Maximum sensitivity].

When [On] is selected, the viewfinder and rear control panel show **ISO-AUTO**. When sensitivity is altered from the value selected by the user, these indicators blink and the altered value is shown in the viewfinder.



Auto ISO Sensitivity Control

Noise is more likely at higher sensitivities. Use the [High ISO NR] option in the shooting menu to reduce noise (see page 299). Foreground subjects may be underexposed in photos taken with a flash at slow shutter speeds, in daylight, or against a bright background. Choose a flash mode other than slow sync or select exposure mode A or M and choose a larger aperture.

Exposure

– Controlling How the Camera Sets Exposure

This section describes the options available to control exposure, including metering, exposure mode, exposure lock, exposure compensation, and bracketing.

Metering ..... pg. 114

Exposure Mode ..... pg. 116

P: Programmed Auto ..... pg. 118
S: Shutter-Priority Auto ..... pg. 120
A: Aperture-Priority Auto ..... pg. 122
M: Manual ..... pg. 124

Shutter-Speed and Aperture Lock ..... pg. 127

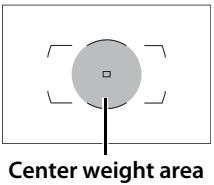
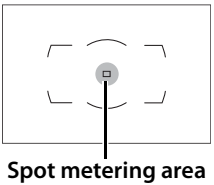
Autoexposure (AE) Lock ..... pg. 129

Exposure Compensation ..... pg. 132

Bracketing ..... pg. 134

Metering

Metering determines how the camera sets exposure. The following options are available:

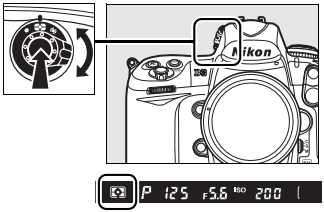
Method	Description
3D color matrix II	Recommended in most situations. Camera meters a wide area of the frame and sets exposure according to distribution of brightness, color, distance, and composition for natural results.
Center-weighted	Camera meters entire frame but assigns greatest weight to area in center of frame (defaults to 12-mm circle in center of viewfinder; if CPU lens is attached, area can be selected using Custom Setting b5, [Center-weighted area], pg. 315 *). Classic meter for portraits. †  **Center weight area**
Spot	Camera meters circle 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter (approximately 1.5% of frame). Circle is centered on current focus point, making it possible to meter off-center subjects (if non-CPU lens is used or if auto-area AF is in effect (pg. 76), camera will meter center focus point). Ensures that subject will be correctly exposed, even when background is much brighter or darker. †  **Spot metering area**

* When non-CPU lens is attached, average for entire frame will be used if [Average] is selected for Custom Setting b5; otherwise, center-weighted metering for non-CPU lenses will use 12-mm circle in center of viewfinder, regardless of setting selected for [Non-CPU lens data].

† For improved precision with non-CPU lenses, specify lens focal length and maximum aperture in [Non-CPU lens data] menu (pg. 220).

To choose a metering method, press the metering selector lock button and rotate the metering selector until the desired mode is displayed.

Metering selector lock button



3D Color Matrix II Metering

In matrix metering, exposure is set using a 1005-segment RGB sensor. Use a type G or D lens for results that include range information (3D color matrix metering II; see page 380 for information on lens types). With other CPU lenses, 3D range information is not included (color matrix metering II). Color matrix metering is available when focal length and maximum aperture of non-CPU lens are specified using [Non-CPU lens data] item in setup menu (see page 220; center-weighted metering is used if focal length or aperture is not specified).

See Also

For information on choosing the size of the area assigned the greatest weight in center-weighted metering, see Custom Setting b5 ([Center-weighted area], pg. 315). For information on making separate adjustments to optimal exposure for each metering method, see Custom Setting b6 ([Fine tune optimal exposure], pg. 315).

Exposure Mode

Exposure mode determines how the camera sets shutter speed and aperture when adjusting exposure. Four modes are available: programmed auto (P), shutter-priority auto (S), aperture-priority auto (A), and manual (M).

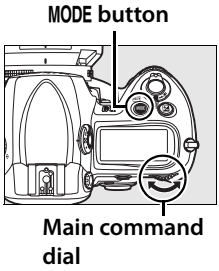
Mode	Description
P Programmed auto (pg. 118)	Camera sets shutter speed and aperture for optimal exposure. Recommended for snapshots and in other situations in which there is little time to adjust camera settings.
S Shutter-priority auto (pg. 120)	User chooses shutter speed; camera selects aperture for best results. Use to freeze or blur motion.
A Aperture-priority auto (pg. 122)	User chooses aperture; camera selects shutter speed for best results. Use to blur background for portraits or bring both foreground and background into focus for landscape shots.
M Manual (pg. 124)	User controls both shutter speed and aperture. Set shutter speed to "bulb" for long time-exposures.

Lens Types

When using a CPU lens equipped with an aperture ring, lock the aperture ring at the minimum aperture (highest f-number). Type G lenses are not equipped with an aperture ring.

Non-CPU lenses can only be used in exposure mode A (aperture-priority auto) and M (manual). In other modes, exposure mode A is automatically selected when a non-CPU lens is attached. The exposure mode indicator (P or S) in the top control panel will blink and A will be displayed in the viewfinder.

To choose the exposure mode, press the **MODE** button and rotate the main command dial until the desired mode is displayed in the viewfinder or top control panel.



Depth-of-Field Preview

To preview the effects of aperture, press and hold the depth-of-field preview button. The lens will be stopped down to the aperture value selected by the camera (modes P and S) or the value chosen by the user (modes A and M), allowing depth of field to be previewed in the viewfinder.

Custom Setting e3—Modeling Flash

This setting controls whether the SB-800, SB-600, SB-R200, and other optional flash units that support the Creative Lighting System (CLS; see page 190) will emit a modeling flash when the depth-of-field preview button is pressed. See page 326 for more information.

See Also

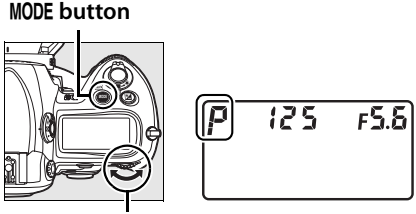
See page 110 for information on auto ISO sensitivity control. For information on using the [Long exp. NR] option in the shooting menu for reducing noise at slow shutter speeds, see page 299. For information on choosing the size of the increments available for shutter speed and aperture, see Custom Setting b2 ([EV steps for exposure cntrl.], pg. 313). For information on changing the roles of the main and sub-command dials, see Custom Setting f7 ([Customize command dials] > [Change main/sub], pg. 339).

P: Programmed Auto

In this mode, the camera automatically adjusts shutter speed and aperture according to a built-in program to ensure optimal exposure in most situations. This mode is recommended for snapshots and other situations in which you want to leave the camera in charge of shutter speed and aperture. To take photographs in programmed auto:

1 Select exposure mode P.

Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until P is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.

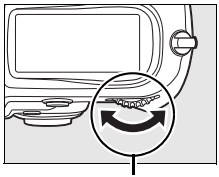


2 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

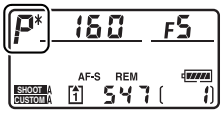
Shutter speed: 1/320 s
Aperture: f/9

Flexible Program

In exposure mode **P**, different combinations of shutter speed and aperture can be selected by rotating the main command dial ("flexible program"). Rotate the command dial to the right for large apertures (small f-numbers) that blur background details or fast shutter speeds that "freeze" motion. Rotate the command dial to the left for small apertures (large f-numbers) that increase depth of field or slow shutter speeds that blur motion. All combinations produce the same exposure. While flexible program is in effect, an asterisk ("*") appears in the top control panel. To restore default shutter speed and aperture settings, rotate the command dial until the asterisk is no longer displayed, choose another mode, or turn the camera off.



Main command dial



Shutter speed: 1/2,000 s
Aperture: f/3.5

Shutter speed: 1/50 s
Aperture: f/22

See Also

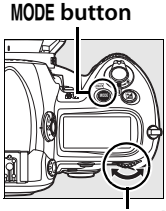
See page 426 for information on the built-in exposure program.

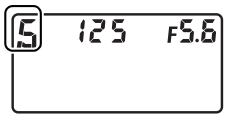
S: Shutter-Priority Auto

In shutter-priority auto, you choose the shutter speed while the camera automatically selects the aperture that will produce the optimal exposure. To take photographs in shutter-priority auto:

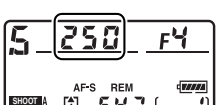
1 Select exposure mode S.

Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until S is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.





2 Choose a shutter speed.



Rotate the main command dial to choose the desired shutter speed. Shutter speed can be set to "x 250" (the flash sync speed limit) or to values between 30 s (30'') and 1/8,000 s (8000). Use slow shutter speeds to suggest motion by blurring moving objects, high shutter speeds to "freeze" motion.

Fast shutter speed ($^1/_{1,000}$ s)

Slow shutter speed ($^1/_{10}$ s)

Shutter speed can be locked at the selected setting (see page 127).

3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

See Also

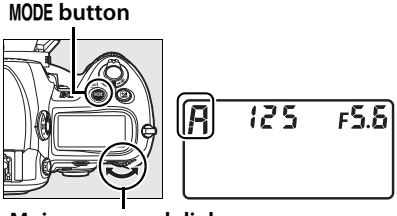
See page 411 for information on what to do if flashing "bLb" indicator appears in the shutter-speed displays.

A: Aperture-Priority Auto

In aperture-priority auto, you choose the aperture while the camera automatically selects the shutter speed that will produce the optimal exposure. To take photographs in aperture-priority auto:

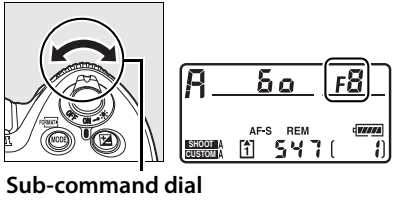
1 Select exposure mode A.

Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until A is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.



2 Choose an aperture.

Rotate the sub-command dial to choose the desired aperture from values between the minimum and maximum for the lens.



Small apertures (high f-numbers) increase depth of field (see page 117), bringing both foreground and background into focus. Large apertures (low f-numbers) soften background details in portraits or other compositions that emphasize the main subject.

Small aperture (f/36)

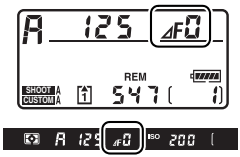
Large aperture (f/2.8)

Aperture can be locked at the selected setting (see page 128).

3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

Non-CPU Lenses

If the maximum aperture of the lens has been specified using the [Non-CPU lens data] item in setup menu (pg. 220) when a non-CPU lens is attached, the current f-number will be displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel, rounded to the nearest full stop. Otherwise the aperture displays will show only the number of stops (**A**, with maximum aperture displayed as **A**0) and the f-number must be read from the lens aperture ring.

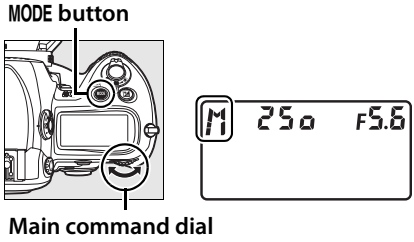


M: Manual

In manual exposure mode, you control both shutter speed and aperture. To take photographs in manual exposure mode:

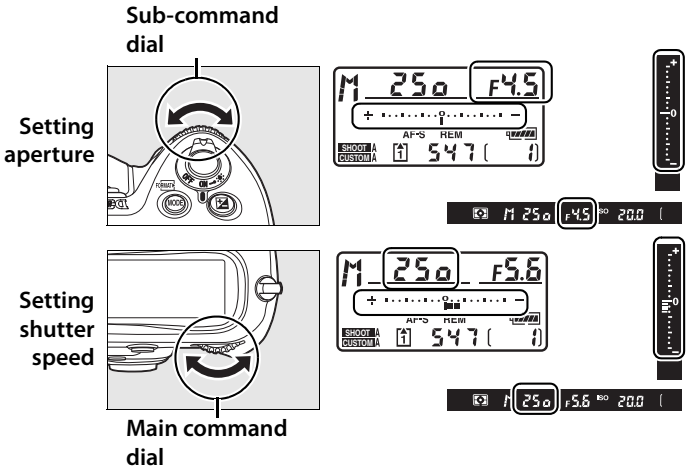
1 Select exposure mode M.

Press the MODE button and rotate the main command dial until M is displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.



2 Choose aperture and shutter speed.

Rotate the main command dial to choose a shutter speed, and the sub-command dial to set aperture. Shutter speed can be set to "x 250" (the flash sync speed limit) or to values between 30 s and 1/8,000 s, or the shutter can be held open indefinitely for a long time-exposure (bulb, pg. 126). Aperture can be set to values between the minimum and maximum values for the lens. Check exposure in the electronic analog exposure displays (see page 126), and continue to adjust shutter speed and aperture until the desired exposure is achieved.



Shutter speed and aperture can be locked at the selected setting (see pages 127, 128).

3 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

Shutter speed: $^{1}/_{250}$ s
Aperture: f/8

AF Micro Nikkor Lenses

Provided that an external exposure meter is used, the exposure ratio need only be taken into account when the lens aperture ring is used to set aperture.

Electronic Analog Exposure Displays

The electronic analog exposure displays in the viewfinder and top control panel show whether the photograph would be under- or over-exposed at current settings. Depending on the option chosen for Custom Setting b2 ([EV steps for exposure cntrl.], pg. 313), the amount of under- or over-exposure is shown in increments of 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV. If the limits of the exposure metering system are exceeded, the displays will flash.

	Custom Setting b2 set to [1/3 step]		
	Optimal exposure	Underexposed by 1/3 EV	Overexposed by over 3 EV
Control panel			
Viewfinder			

Long Time-Exposures

At a shutter speed of bulb, the shutter will remain open while the shutter-release button is held down. Use for long time-exposure photographs of moving lights, the stars, night scenery, or fireworks. Nikon recommends using a fully-charged EN-EL4a battery or an optional EH-6 AC adapter to prevent loss of power while the shutter is open. Note that noise and distortion may be present in long exposures; before shooting, choose [On] for the [Long exp. NR] option in the shooting menu (pg. 299).

Shutter speed: 35 s
Aperture: f/25

See Also

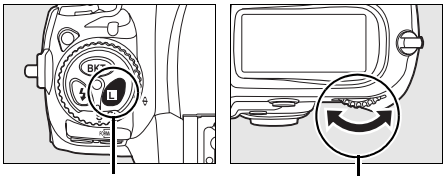
See Custom Setting f10 ([Reverse indicators], pg. 343) for information on reversing the electronic analog exposure display.

Shutter-Speed and Aperture Lock

The L button can be used to lock shutter speed at the value selected in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure mode, or to lock aperture at the value selected in aperture-priority auto and manual exposure modes. Lock is not available in programmed auto.

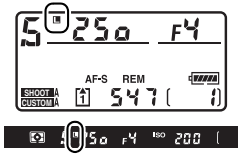
■■ *Shutter-Speed Lock*

To lock shutter speed at the selected value, press the L button and rotate the main command dial until L icons appear in the viewfinder and the top control panel.



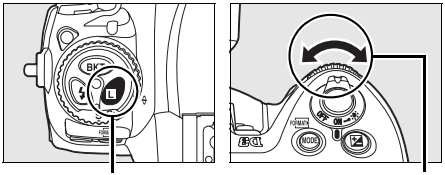
L button **Main command dial**

To unlock shutter speed, press the L button and rotate the main command dial until the L icons disappear from the displays.



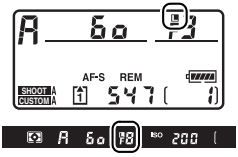
▮▮ *Aperture Lock*

To lock aperture at the selected value, press the **L** button and rotate the sub-command dial until **L** icons appear in the viewfinder and the top control panel.



L button **Sub-command dial**

To unlock aperture, press the **L** button and rotate the sub-command dial until the **L** icons disappear from the displays.

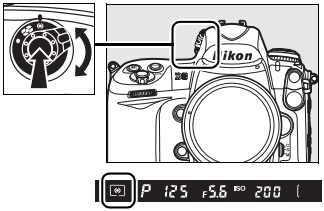


Autoexposure (AE) Lock

Use autoexposure lock to recompose photographs after metering exposure.

1 Select center-weighted or spot metering (pg. 114).

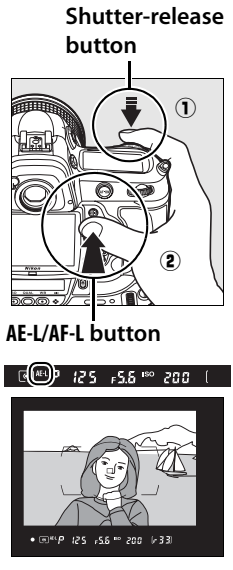
Matrix metering will not produce the desired results with autoexposure lock. If using center-weighted metering, select the center focus point with the multi selector (pg. 78).



2 Lock exposure.

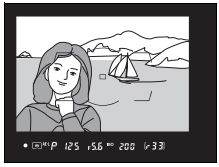
Position the subject in the selected focus point and press the shutter-release button halfway. With the shutter-release button pressed halfway and the subject positioned in the focus point, press the **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock exposure (and focus, except in manual focus mode). Confirm that the in-focus indicator (●) appears in the viewfinder.

While exposure lock is in effect, an **AE-L** indicator will appear in the viewfinder.



3 Recompose the photograph.

Keeping the **AE-L/AF-L** button pressed, recompose the photograph and shoot.



Metered Area

In spot metering, exposure will be locked at the value metered in a 4-mm (0.16 in.) circle centered on the selected focus point. In center-weighted metering, exposure will be locked at the value metered in the center of the viewfinder (the default area for center-weighted metering is shown by the 12-mm circle in the viewfinder).

Adjusting Shutter Speed and Aperture

While exposure lock is in effect, the following settings can be changed without altering the metered value for exposure:

Exposure mode	Settings
P	Shutter speed and aperture (flexible program; pg. 119)
S	Shutter speed
A	Aperture

The new values can be confirmed in the viewfinder and top control panel. Note that the metering method can not be changed while exposure lock is in effect (changes to metering take effect when the lock is released).

See Also

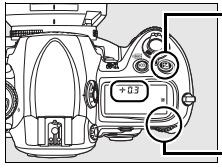
If [On] is selected for Custom Setting c1 ([Shutter-release button AE-L], pg. 317), exposure will lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway. For information on changing the role of the **AE-L/AF-L** button, see Custom Setting f6 ([Assign AE-L/AF-L button], pg. 338).

Exposure Compensation

Exposure compensation is used to alter exposure from the value suggested by the camera, making pictures brighter or darker. It is most effective when used with center-weighted or spot metering (see page 114).

In exposure mode M, only the exposure information shown in the electronic analog exposure display is affected; shutter speed and aperture do not change.

To choose a value for exposure compensation, press the ⊠ button and rotate the main command dial until the desired value is displayed in the viewfinder or top control panel.



±0 EV
(⊠ button pressed)

–0.3 EV

+2.0 EV

Exposure compensation can be set to values between –5 EV (underexposure) and +5 EV (overexposure) in increments of 1/3 EV. In general, choose positive values to make the subject brighter, negative values to make it darker.

–1 EV

No exposure compensation

+1 EV

At values other than ±0, the 0 at the center of the electronic analog exposure displays will flash and a ± icon will be displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel after you release the ± button. The current value for exposure compensation can be confirmed in the electronic analog exposure display by pressing the ± button.

Normal exposure can be restored by setting exposure compensation to ±0. Exposure compensation is not reset when the camera is turned off.

See Also

For information on choosing the size of the increments available for exposure compensation, see Custom Setting b3 ([EV steps for exposure comp.], pg. 313). For information on making adjustments to exposure compensation without pressing the ± button, see Custom Setting b4 ([Easy exposure compensation], pg. 314).

Bracketing

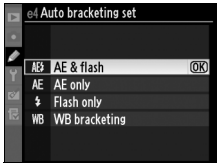
The camera offers three types of bracketing: exposure bracketing, flash bracketing, and white balance bracketing. In *exposure bracketing* (pg. 135), the camera varies exposure compensation with each shot, while in the case of *flash bracketing* (pg. 135), flash level is varied with each shot (i-TTL and, in the case of the SB-800, auto aperture flash control modes only; see pages 190 and 192). Only one photograph is produced each time the shutter is released, meaning that several shots are required to complete the bracketing sequence. Exposure and flash bracketing are recommended in situations in which it is difficult to set exposure and there is not enough time to check results and adjust settings with each shot.

In *white balance bracketing* (pg. 139), the camera creates multiple images each time the shutter is released, each with a different white balance adjustment. Only one shot is required to complete the bracketing sequence. White balance bracketing is recommended when shooting under mixed lighting or experimenting with different white balance settings.

See Also

At default settings, the camera varies both exposure and flash level. Custom Setting e4 ([Auto bracketing set], pg. 327) is used to choose the type of bracketing performed.

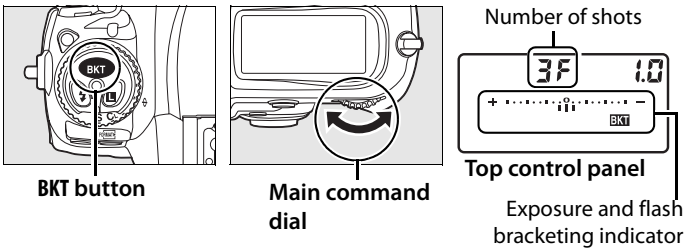
1 Select flash or exposure bracketing.



Choose the type of bracketing to be performed using Custom Setting e4 ([Auto bracketing set], pg. 327). Choose [AE & flash] to vary both exposure and flash level (the default setting), [AE only] to vary only exposure, or [Flash only] to vary only flash level.

2 Choose the number of shots.

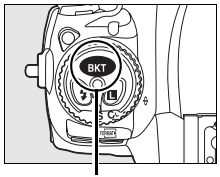
Pressing the **BKT** button, rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing sequence. The number of shots is shown in the top control panel.



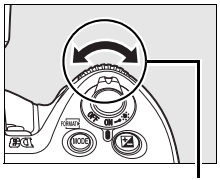
At settings other than zero, a BKT icon and exposure and flash bracketing indicator will be displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.

3 Select an exposure increment.

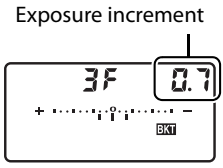
Pressing the **BKT** button, rotate the sub-command dial to choose the exposure increment.



BKT button



Sub-command dial



Top control panel

At default settings, the size of the increment can be chosen from 1/3, 2/3, and 1 EV. The bracketing programs with an increment of 1/3 EV are listed below.

Control panel display	No. of shots	Bracketing order (EVs)
0F 0.3	0	0
+3F 0.3	3	+0.3/0/+0.7
--3F 0.3	3	–0.3/–0.7/0
+2F 0.3	2	0/+0.3
--2F 0.3	2	0/–0.3
3F 0.3	3	0/–0.3/+0.3
5F 0.3	5	0/–0.7/–0.3/+0.3/+0.7
7F 0.3	7	0/–1.0/–0.7/–0.3/+0.3/+0.7/+1.0
9F 0.3	9	0/–1.3/–1.0/–0.7/–0.3/+0.3/+0.7/+1.0/+1.3

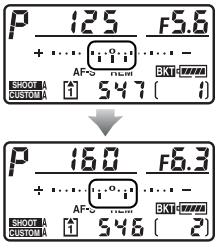
See Also

For information on choosing the size of the exposure increment, see Custom Setting b2 ([EV steps for exposure cntrl.], pg. 313). For information on choosing the order in which bracketing is performed, see Custom Setting e6 ([Bracketing order], pg. 329).

4 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

The camera will vary exposure and/or flash level shot-by-shot according to the bracketing program selected. Modifications to exposure are added to those made with exposure compensation (see page 132), making it possible to achieve exposure compensation values of more than 5 EV.

While bracketing is in effect, a bracketing progress indicator will be displayed in the top control panel and viewfinder. A segment will disappear from the indicator after each shot.



Exposure increment: 0 EV

Exposure increment: –1 EV

Exposure increment: +1 EV

■■ *Canceling Bracketing*

To cancel bracketing, press the **BKT** button and rotate the main command dial until the number of shots in the bracketing sequence is zero (**F**) and BKT is no longer displayed in the control panel on top of the camera. The program last in effect will be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Bracketing can also be cancelled by performing a two-button reset (pg. 206), although in this case the bracketing program will not be restored the next time bracketing is activated.

Exposure and Flash Bracketing

In single frame and self-timer modes, one shot will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed. In continuous low speed and continuous high speed modes, shooting will pause after the number of shots specified in the bracketing program have been taken. Shooting will resume the next time the shutter-release button is pressed.

If the memory card fills before all shots in the sequence have been taken, shooting can be resumed from the next shot in the sequence after the memory card has been replaced or shots have been deleted to make room on the memory card. If the camera is turned off before all shots in the sequence have been taken, bracketing will resume from the next shot in the sequence when the camera is turned on.

Exposure Bracketing

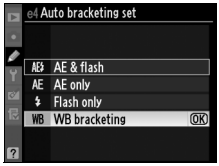
The camera modifies exposure by varying shutter speed and aperture (programmed auto), aperture (shutter-priority auto), or shutter speed (aperture-priority auto, manual exposure mode). When [On] is selected for [ISO sensitivity settings] > [ISO sensitivity auto control] in shooting menu and no flash is attached, the camera will automatically vary ISO sensitivity for optimum exposure when the limits of the camera exposure system are exceeded.

Custom Setting e5 ([Auto bracketing (mode M)], pg. 328) can be used to change how the camera performs exposure and flash bracketing in manual exposure mode. Bracketing can be performed by varying flash level together with shutter speed and/or aperture, or by varying flash level alone.

■■ *White Balance Bracketing*

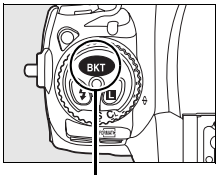
1 Select white balance bracketing.

Choose [WB bracketing] for Custom Setting e4 [Auto bracketing set] (pg. 327).

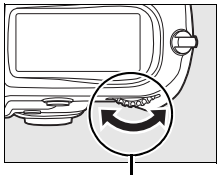


2 Choose the number of shots.

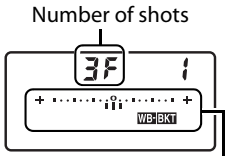
Pressing the **BKT** button, rotate the main command dial to choose the number of shots in the bracketing sequence. The number of shots is shown in the top control panel.



BKT button



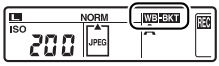
Main command dial



Top control panel

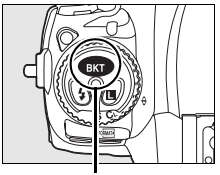
WB bracketing indicator

At settings other than zero, a WB bracketing indicator will appear in the top control panel and a WB·BKT icon will be displayed in the top and rear control panels.

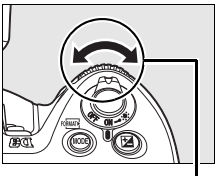


3 Select a white balance increment.

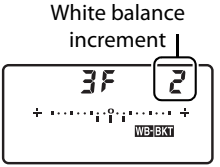
Pressing the **BKT** button, rotate the sub-command dial to choose the white balance adjustment. Each increment is roughly equivalent to 5 mired.



BKT button



Sub-command dial



Top control panel

Choose from increments of 1 (5 mired), 2 (10 mired), or 3 (15 mired). Higher **B** values correspond to increased amounts of blue, higher **A** values to increased amounts of amber (pg. 148). The bracketing programs with an increment of 1 are listed below.

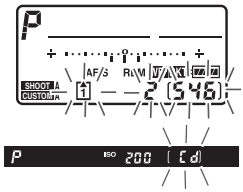
Control panel display	No. of shots	White balance increment	Bracketing order (EVs)
0F 1	0	1	0
b3F 1	3	1 B	1 B / 0 / 2 B
A3F 1	3	1 A	1 A / 2 A / 0
b2F 1	2	1 B	0 / 1 B
A2F 1	2	1 A	0 / 1 A
3F 1	3	1 A, 1 B	0 / 1 A / 1 B
5F 1	5	1 A, 1 B	0 / 2 A / 1 A / 1 B / 2 B
7F 1	7	1 A, 1 B	0 / 3 A / 2 A / 1 A / 1 B / 2 B / 3 B
9F 1	9	1 A, 1 B	0/4A/3A/2A/1A/ 1 B / 2 B / 3 B / 4 B

See Also

See page 149 for a definition of "Mired."

4 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

Each shot will be processed to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program, and each copy will have a different white balance. Modifications to white balance are added to the white balance adjustment made with white balance fine-tuning.



If the number of shots in the bracketing program is greater than the number of exposures remaining, the number of exposures remaining, frame count, and [ ] icon will flash in the top control panel, a flashing [ ] icon will appear in the viewfinder, and the shutter release will be disabled. Shooting can begin when a new memory card is inserted.

■■ *Canceling Bracketing*

To cancel bracketing, press the **BKT** button and rotate the main command dial until the number of shots in the bracketing sequence is zero (**OFF**) and WB BKT are no longer displayed in the control panels. The program last in effect will be restored the next time bracketing is activated. Bracketing can also be cancelled by performing a two-button reset (pg. 206), although in this case the bracketing program will not be restored the next time bracketing is activated.

White Balance Bracketing

White balance bracketing is not available at an image quality of NEF (RAW). Selecting [NEF (RAW)], [NEF (RAW)+JPEG fine], [NEF (RAW)+JPEG normal], or [NEF (RAW)+JPEG basic] cancels white balance bracketing.

White balance bracketing affects only color temperature (the amber-blue axis in the white balance fine-tuning display, pg. 148). No adjustments are made on the green-magenta axis.

In self-timer mode (pg. 103), the number of copies specified in the white-balance program will be created each time the shutter is released.

If the camera is turned off while the memory card access lamp is lit, the camera will power off only after all photographs in the sequence have been recorded.

White Balance

– Keeping Colors True

The color of light reflected from an object varies with the color of the light source. The human brain is able to adapt to changes in the color of the light source, with the result that white objects appear white whether seen in the shade, direct sunlight, or under incandescent lighting. Unlike the film used in film cameras, digital cameras can mimic this adjustment by processing images according to the color of the light source. This is known as "white balance." This chapter covers white balance settings.

White Balance Options..... pg. 144

Fine-Tuning White Balance..... pg. 147

Choosing a Color Temperature..... pg. 151

Preset Manual ..... pg. 152

White Balance Options

For natural coloration, choose a white balance setting that matches the light source before shooting. The following options are available:

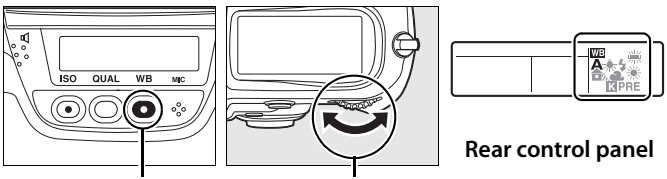
Option		Color temp. (K)	Description
AUTO	**Auto** (default)	3,500–8,000*	White balance is adjusted automatically using color temperature measured by image sensor and 1,005-segment RGB sensor. For best results, use type G or D lens. If optional flash unit is used, white balance reflects conditions in effect when the flash goes off.
	Incandescent	3,000*	Use under incandescent lighting.
	Fluorescent		Use under following seven light sources:
	Sodium-vapor lamps	2,700*	Use under sodium-vapor lighting (found in sports venues).
	Warm-white fluorescent	3,000*	Use under warm-white fluorescent lights.
	White fluorescent	3,700*	Use under white fluorescent lights.
	Cool-white fluorescent	4,200*	Use under cool-white fluorescent lights.
	Day white fluorescent	5,000*	Use under daylight white fluorescent lights.
	Daylight fluorescent	6,500*	Use under daylight fluorescent lights.
	High temp. mercury-vapor	7,200*	Use under high color temperature light sources (e.g. mercury-vapor lamps).
	Direct sunlight	5,200*	Use with subjects lit by direct sunlight.

Option	Color temp. (K)	Description
Flash	5,400*	Use with optional flash units.
Cloudy	6,000*	Use in daylight under overcast skies.
Shade	8,000*	Use in daylight with subjects in the shade.
Choose color temp.	2,500–10,000	Choose color temperature from list of values (pg. 151).
PRE Preset manual	—	Use subject, light source, or existing photograph as reference for white balance (pg. 152).

* All values are approximate. Fine-tuning set to 0.

Auto white balance is recommended with most light sources. If the desired results can not be achieved with auto white balance, choose an option from the list above or use preset white balance.

White balance can be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the main command dial until the desired setting is displayed in the rear control panel.



The White Balance Menu

White balance can also be adjusted using the [White balance] option in the shooting menu (pg. 290).

(Fluorescent)

Selecting (fluorescent) with the **WB** button and main command dial selects the type of bulb chosen for the [Fluorescent] option in the white balance menu (pg. 290).

Studio Flash Lighting

Auto white balance may not produce the desired results with large studio flash units. Choose a color temperature, use preset white balance, or set white balance to [Flash] and use fine tuning to adjust white balance.

Color Temperature

The perceived color of a light source varies with the viewer and other conditions. Color temperature is an objective measure of the color of a light source, defined with reference to the temperature to which an object would have to be heated to radiate light in the same wavelengths. While light sources with a color temperature in the neighborhood of 5,000–5,500K appear white, light sources with a lower color temperature, such as incandescent light bulbs, appear slightly yellow or red. Light sources with a higher color temperature appear tinged with blue.

See Also

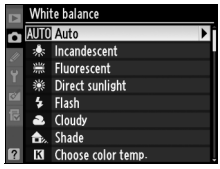
When [WB bracketing] is selected for Custom Setting e4 ([Auto bracketing set], pg. 327), the camera will create several images each time the shutter is released. White balance will be varied with each image, "bracketing" the value currently selected for white balance. See pages 134 for more information.

Fine-Tuning White Balance

White balance can be "fine tuned" to compensate for variations in the color of the light source or to introduce a deliberate color cast into an image. White balance is fine tuned using the [White balance] option in the shooting menu or by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial.

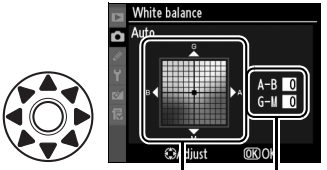
■■ *The White Balance Menu*

1 Select a white balance option.

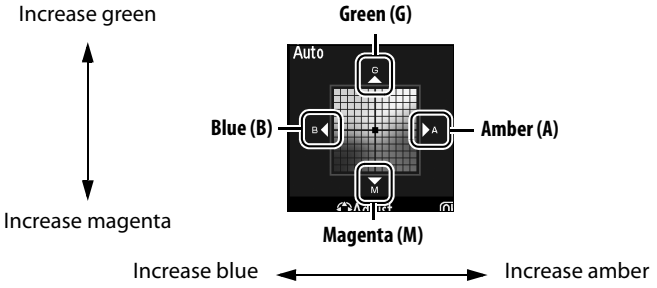


Select [White balance] in the shooting menu (pg. 290), then highlight a white balance option and press ▶. If an option other than [Fluorescent], [Choose color temp.], or [Preset manual] is selected, proceed to Step 2. If [Fluorescent] is selected, highlight a lighting type and press ▶. If [Choose color temp.] is selected, highlight a color temperature and press ▶. If [Preset manual] is selected, choose a preset as described on page 161 before proceeding.

2 Fine tune white balance.

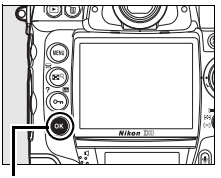


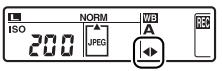
Use the multi selector to fine-tune white balance. White balance can be fine tuned on the amber (A)–blue (B) axis and the green (G)–magenta (M) axis. The horizontal (amber-blue) axis corresponds to color temperature, with each increment equivalent to about 5 mired. The vertical (green-magenta) axis has the similar effects to the corresponding **c**olor **c**ompensation (CC) filters.



3 Press OK.

Press OK to save settings and return to the shooting menu. If white balance has been fine-tuned on the A-B axis, a ◂▸ icon will be displayed in the rear control panel.





White Balance Fine Tuning

The colors on the fine-tuning axes are relative, not absolute. For example, moving the cursor to **B** (blue) when a "warm" setting such as ☀ (incandescent) is selected for white balance will make photographs slightly "colder" but will not actually make them blue.

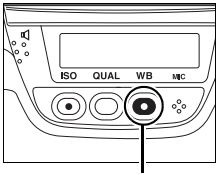
"Mired"

Any given change in color temperature produces a greater difference in color at low color temperatures than it would at higher color temperatures. For example, a change of 1000 K produces a much greater change in color at 3000 K than at 6000 K. Mired, calculated by multiplying the inverse of the color temperature by 10^6, is a measure of color temperature that takes such variation into account, and as such is the unit used in color-temperature compensation filters. E.g.:

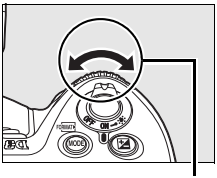
- 4000 K–3000 K (a difference of 1000 K)=83 mired
- 7000 K–6000 K (a difference of 1000 K)=24 mired

■■ *The WB Button*

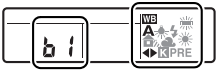
At settings other than K ([Choose color temp.]) and **PRE** ([Preset manual]), the **WB** button can be used to fine-tune white balance on the amber (A)–blue (B) axis (pg. 148; to fine-tune white balance when K or **PRE** is selected, use the shooting menu as described on page 147). Six settings in both directions are available; each increment is equivalent to about 5 mired (pg. 149). Press the **WB** button and rotate the sub-command dial until the desired value is displayed in the rear control panel. Rotating the sub-command dial to the left increases the amount of amber (A). Rotating the sub-command dial to the right increases the amount of blue (B). At settings other than 0, a ◂▸ icon appears in the rear control panel.



WB button



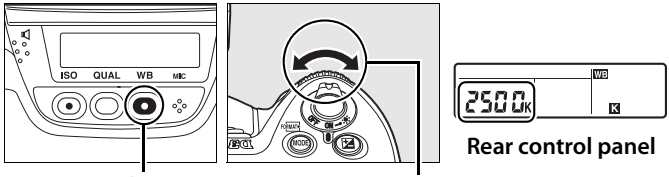
Sub-command dial



Rear control panel

Choosing a Color Temperature

When K ([Choose color temp.]) is selected for white balance, color temperature can be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial. The color temperature is displayed in the rear control panel:



WB button **Sub-command dial** **Rear control panel**

Choose Color Temperature

Note that the desired results will not be obtained with flash or fluorescent lighting. Choose ϟ ([Flash]) or ▦ ([Fluorescent]) for these sources. With other light sources, take a test shot to determine if the selected value is appropriate.

The White Balance Menu

Color temperature can also be selected in the white balance menu. Note that the color temperature with the **WB** button and the sub-command dial replaces the value selected in the white balance menu.

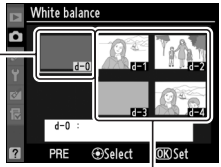
Preset Manual

Preset manual is used to record and recall custom white balance settings for shooting under mixed lighting or to compensate for light sources with a strong color cast. Two methods are available for setting preset white balance:

Method	Description
Direct measurement	Neutral gray or white object is placed under lighting that will be used in final photograph and white balance is measured by camera (pg. 154).
Copy from existing photograph	White balance is copied from photo on memory card (pg. 158).

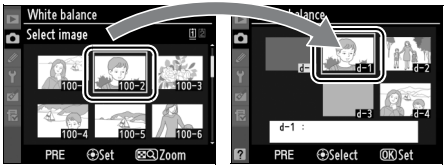
The camera can store up to five values for preset white balance in presets d-0 through d-4. A descriptive comment can be added to any white balance preset (pg. 163).

d-0
Stores last value measured for white balance (pg. 154). This preset is overwritten when a new value is measured.



d-1–d-4
Store values copied from d-0 (pg. 158).

Store values copied from images on memory card (pg. 159).



WB

White Balance Presets

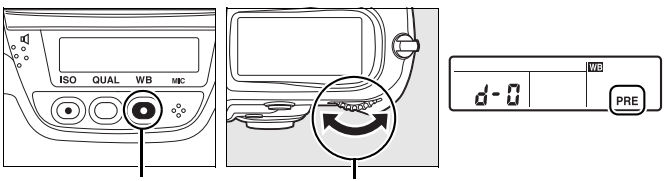
Changes to white balance presets apply to all shooting menu banks (pg. 291). A confirmation dialog will be displayed if the user attempts to change a white balance preset created in another shooting menu bank (no warning is displayed for preset d-0).

1 Light a reference object.

Place a neutral gray or white object under the lighting that will be used in the final photograph. In studio settings, a standard gray panel can be used as a reference object. Note that exposure is automatically increased by 1 EV when measuring white balance; in exposure mode **M**, adjust exposure so that the electronic analog exposure displays shows ±0 (pg. 126).

2 Set white balance to PRE ([Preset manual]).

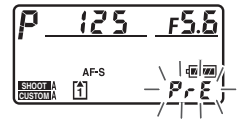
Press the **WB** button and rotate the main command dial until **PRE** is displayed in the rear control panel.



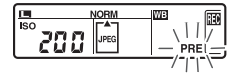
WB button **Main command dial** **Rear control panel**

3 Select direct measurement mode.

Release the **WB** button briefly and then press the button until the **PRE** icon starts to flash. A flashing PrE will also appear in the top control panel and viewfinder. At default settings, the displays will flash for about six seconds.



Top control panel



Rear control panel

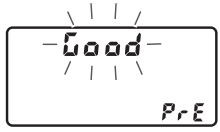
Viewfinder

4 Measure white balance.

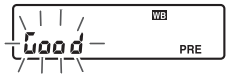
Before the indicators stop flashing, frame the reference object so that it fills the viewfinder and press the shutter-release button all the way down. The camera will measure a value for white balance and store it in preset d-0. No photograph will be recorded; white balance can be measured accurately even when the camera is not in focus.

5 Check the results.

If the camera was able to measure a value for white balance, **Good** will flash in the control panels, while the viewfinder will show a flashing **Gd**. At default settings, the displays will flash for about six seconds.



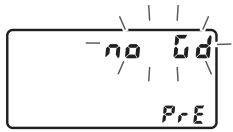
Top control panel



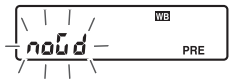
Rear control panel

Viewfinder

If lighting is too dark or too bright, the camera may be unable to measure white balance. A flashing **noGd** will appear in the control panels and viewfinder (at default settings, the displays will flash for about six seconds). Press the shutter-release button halfway to return to Step 4 and measure white balance again.



Top control panel



Rear control panel

Viewfinder

6 Select preset d-0.

If the new value for preset white balance will be used immediately, select preset d-0 by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial until d-0 is displayed in the rear control panel.

Direct Measurement Mode

If no operations are performed while the displays are flashing, direct measurement mode will end in the time selected for Custom Setting c2 ([Auto meter-off delay], pg. 317). The default setting is six seconds.

Preset d-0

The new value for white balance will be stored in preset d-0, automatically replacing the previous value for this preset (no confirmation dialog will be displayed). A thumbnail will be displayed in the preset white balance list.

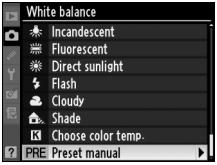
To use the new value for white balance, select preset d-0 (if no value has been measured for white balance before d-0 is selected, white balance will be set to a color temperature of 5,200 K, the same as [Direct sunlight]). The new white balance value will remain in preset d-0 until white balance is measured again. By copying preset d-0 to one of the other presets before measuring a new value for white balance, up to five white balance values can be stored (pg. 158).

■■ *Copying White Balance from d-0 to Presets d-1–d-4*

Follow the steps below to copy a measured value for white balance from d-0 to any of the other presets (d-1–d-4).

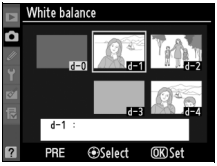
1 Select PRE ([Preset manual]).

Highlight [Preset manual] in the white balance menu (pg. 144) and press ▶.



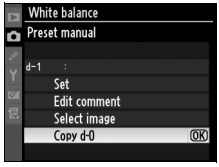
2 Select a destination.

Highlight the destination preset (d-1 to d-4) and press the center of the multi selector.



3 Copy d-0 to the selected preset.

Highlight [Copy d-0] and press OK. If comment has been created for d-0 (pg. 163), the comment will be copied to the comment for the selected preset.



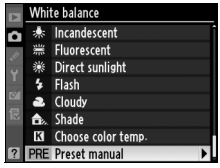
■■ *Copying White Balance from a Photograph (d-1–d-4 Only)*

Follow the steps below to copy a value for white balance from a photograph on the memory card to a selected preset (d-1–d-4 only). Existing white balance values can not be copied to preset d-0.

---

1 **Select PRE ([Preset manual]).**

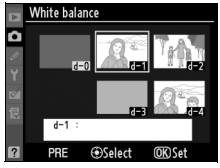
Highlight [Preset manual] in the white balance menu (pg. 144) and press ▶.



---

2 **Select a destination.**

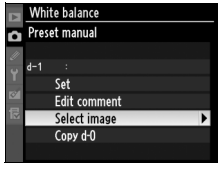
Highlight the destination preset (d-1 to d-4) and press the center of the multi selector.



---

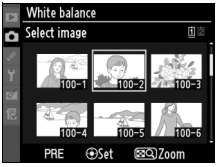
3 **Choose [Select image].**

Highlight [Select image] and press ▶.

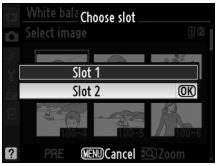


4 Highlight a source image.

Highlight the source image. To view the highlighted image full frame, press the ⊡Q button.



If two memory cards are inserted, the slot can be selected by holding the ⊡Q button and pressing ▲. The menu shown at right will be displayed (pg. 230); highlight the desired slot and press ⊛.

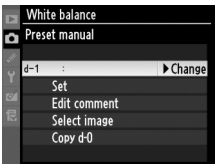


5 Copy white balance.

Press the center of the multi selector to copy the white balance value for the highlighted photograph to the selected preset. If the highlighted photograph has a comment (pg. 348), the comment will be copied to the comment for the selected preset.

Choosing a White Balance Preset

Press ▲ to highlight the current white balance preset (d-0–d-4) and press ▶ to select another preset.

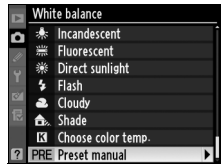


■ *Selecting a White Balance Preset*

To set white balance to a preset value:

1 Select PRE ([Preset manual]).

Highlight [Preset manual] in the white balance menu (pg. 144) and press ▶.

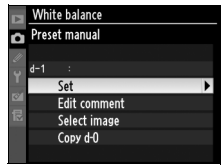


2 Select a preset.

Highlight the desired preset and press the center of the multi selector. To select the highlighted preset and display fine tuning menu (pg. 147) without completing the next step, press ⊛ instead of pressing the center of the multi selector.

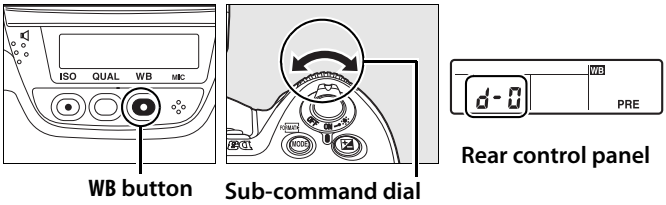
3 Select [Set].

Highlight [Set] and press ▶. Fine tuning menu for the selected white balance preset is displayed (pg. 147).



Selecting a White Balance Preset: the WB Button

At a setting of **PRE** ([Preset manual]), presets can also be selected by pressing the **WB** button and rotating the sub-command dial. The current preset is displayed in the rear control panel while the **WB** button is pressed.



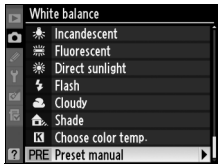
WB button **Sub-command dial** **Rear control panel**

■■ *Entering a Comment*

Follow the steps below to enter a descriptive comment of up to thirty-six characters for a selected white balance preset.

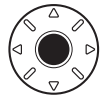
1 **Select PRE ([Preset manual]).**

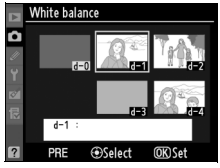
Highlight [Preset manual] in the white balance menu (pg. 144) and press ▶.



2 **Select a preset.**

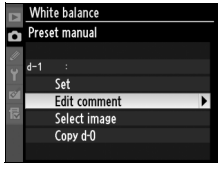
Highlight the desired preset and press the center of the multi selector.





3 **Select [Edit comment].**

Highlight [Edit comment] and press ▶.



4 **Edit the comment.**

Edit the comment as described on page 292.

Image Enhancement

This chapter describes how to optimize sharpening, contrast, brightness, saturation and hue using Picture Controls, how to preserve detail in highlights and shadows using active D-lighting, and how to choose a color space.

Picture Controls ..... **pg. 166**

Creating Custom Picture Controls ..... pg. 174

Active D-Lighting ..... **pg. 185**

Color Space ..... **pg. 187**

Picture Controls

Nikon's unique Picture Control system makes it possible to share image processing settings among compatible devices and software. Select from the Picture Controls provided with the camera to instantly adjust image processing settings, or make independent adjustments to sharpening, contrast, brightness, saturation, and hue. These settings can be saved under new names as custom Picture Controls to be recalled or edited at will. Custom Picture Controls can also be saved to the memory card for use in compatible software, and software-created Picture Controls can be loaded into the camera. Any given set of Picture Controls will produce nearly the same results on all cameras that support the Nikon Picture Control system.

■■ *Using Picture Controls*

Picture Controls can be used as described below.

- **Select Nikon Picture Controls** (pg. 168): Select an existing Nikon Picture Control.
- **Modify existing Picture Controls** (pg. 170): Modify an existing Picture Control to create a combination of sharpening, contrast, brightness, saturation, and hue for a particular scene or effect.
- **Create custom Picture Controls** (pg. 174): Store modified Picture Controls under unique names and recall or edit them as desired.
- **Share custom Picture Controls** (pg. 178): Custom Picture Controls created with the camera can be saved to the memory card for use in ViewNX (supplied) and other compatible software, or software-created custom Picture Controls can be loaded into the camera.
- **Manage custom Picture Controls** (pg. 181): Rename or delete custom Picture Controls.

Nikon Picture Controls Versus Custom Picture Controls

The Picture Controls supplied by Nikon are referred to as *Nikon Picture Controls*. In addition to the Nikon Picture Controls supplied with the camera, *optional Picture Controls* are available for download from Nikon websites. *Custom Picture Controls* are created through modifications to existing Nikon Picture Controls. Both Nikon and custom Picture Controls can be shared among compatible devices and software.

Selecting Nikon Picture Controls

The camera offers four preset Nikon Picture Controls. Choose a Picture Control according to the subject or type of scene.

Option	Description
SD **Standard**	Standard processing for balanced results. Recommended for most situations.
NL **Neutral**	Minimal processing for natural results. Choose for photographs that will later be extensively processed or retouched.
VI **Vivid**	Pictures are enhanced for a vivid, photoprint effect. Choose for photographs that emphasize primary colors.
MC **Monochrome**	Take monochrome photographs.

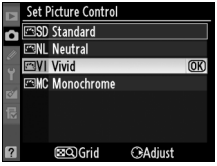
■ *Choosing a Picture Control*

1 Select [Set Picture Control].

In the shooting menu (pg. 290), highlight [Set Picture Control] and press ▶.

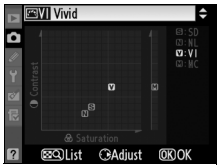
2 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight the desired Picture Control and press ⊛.



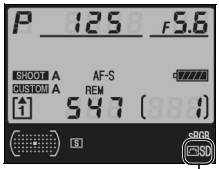
The Picture Control Grid

Pressing the ⊠Q button in Step 2 displays a Picture Control grid showing the contrast and saturation for the selected Picture Control in relation to the other Picture Controls (only contrast is displayed when [Monochrome] is selected). To select a different Picture Control, press ▲ or ▼, then press ▶ to display Picture Control options and press ⊛.



The Picture Control Indicator

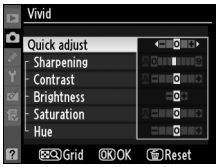
The current Picture Control is shown in the shooting information display when the info button is pressed.



Picture Control indicator

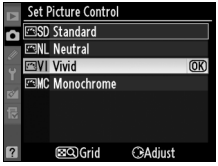
Modifying Existing Picture Controls

Existing Nikon or custom Picture Controls can be modified to suit the scene or the user's creative intent. Choose a balanced combination of settings using [Quick adjust], or make manual adjustments to individual settings.



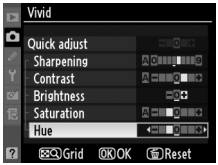
1 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight the desired Picture Control in the [Set Picture Control] menu (pg. 168) and press ▶.



2 Adjust settings.

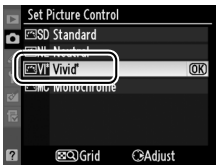
Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the desired setting and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a value (pg. 171). Repeat this step until all settings have been adjusted, or select [Quick adjust] (pg. 171) to choose a preset combination of settings. Default settings can be restored by pressing the 🗑 button.



3 Press OK.

Modifications to Original Picture Controls

Picture Controls that have been modified from default settings are indicated by an asterisk ("✱") in the [Set Picture Control] menu.

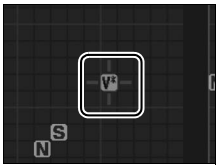


■■ *Picture Control Settings*

Option		Description
Quick adjust		Choose from options between [–2] and [+2] to reduce or exaggerate the effect of the selected Picture Control (note that this resets all manual adjustments). For example, choosing positive values for [Vivid] makes pictures more vivid. Not available with [Neutral], [Monochrome], or custom Picture Controls.
Manual adjustments (all Picture Controls)	**Sharpening**	Control the sharpness of outlines. Select [A] to adjust sharpening automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between [0] (no sharpening) and [9] (the higher the value, the greater the sharpening).
	Contrast	Select [A] to adjust contrast automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between [–3] and [+3] (choose lower values to prevent highlights in portrait subjects from being "washed out" in direct sunlight, higher values to preserve detail in misty landscapes and other low-contrast subjects).
	Brightness	Choose [–1] for reduced brightness, [+1] for enhanced brightness. Does not affect exposure.
Manual adjustments (non-monochrome only)	**Saturation**	Control the vividness of colors. Select [A] to adjust saturation automatically according to the type of scene, or choose from values between [–3] and [+3] (lower values reduce saturation and higher values increase it).
	Hue	Choose negative values (to a minimum of [–3]) to make reds more purple, blues more green, and greens more yellow, positive values (up to [+3]) to make reds more orange, greens more blue, and blues more purple.
Manual adjustments (monochrome only)	**Filter effects**	Simulate the effect of color filters on monochrome photographs. Choose from [Off] (the default setting), yellow, orange, red, and green (pg. 173).
	Toning	Choose the tint used in monochrome photographs from [B&W] (black-and-white, the default setting), [Sepia], [Cyanotype] (blue-tinted monochrome), [Red], [Yellow], [Green], [Blue Green], [Blue], [Purple Blue], and [Red Purple] (pg. 173).

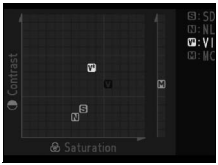
✓ "A" (Auto)

Results for auto contrast and saturation vary with exposure and the position of the subject in the frame. Use a type G or D lens for best results. The icons for Picture Controls that use auto contrast and saturation are displayed in green in the Picture Control grid, and lines appear parallel to the axes of the grid.



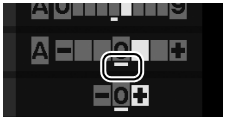
The Picture Control Grid

Pressing the ⊡Q button in Step 2 displays a Picture Control grid showing the contrast and saturation for the selected Picture Control in relation to the other Picture Controls (only contrast is displayed when [Monochrome] is selected). Release the ⊡Q button to return to the Picture Control menu.



Previous Settings

The line under the value display in the Picture Control setting menu indicates the previous value for the setting. Use this as a reference when adjusting settings.



Filter Effects (Monochrome Only)

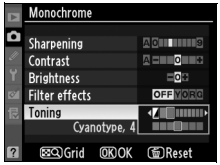
The options in this menu simulate the effect of color filters on monochrome photographs. The following filter effects are available:

Option		Description
Y	Yellow	Enhances contrast. Can be used to tone down the brightness of the sky in landscape photographs. Orange produces more contrast than yellow, red more contrast than orange.
O	Orange	
R	Red	
G	Green	Softens skin tones. Can be used for portraits.

Note that the effects achieved with [Filter effects] are more pronounced than those produced by physical glass filters.

Toning (Monochrome Only)

Pressing ▼ when [Toning] is selected displays saturation options. Press ◀ or ▶ to adjust saturation. Saturation control is not available when [B&W] (black-and-white) is selected.



Custom Picture Controls

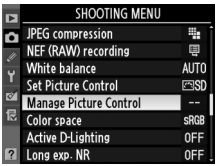
The options available with custom Picture Controls are the same as those on which the custom Picture Control was based.

Creating Custom Picture Controls

The Nikon Picture Controls supplied with the camera can be modified and saved as custom Picture Controls.

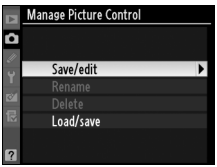
1 Select [Manage Picture Control].

In the shooting menu (pg. 290), highlight [Manage Picture Control] and press ▶.



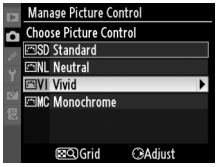
2 Select [Save/edit].

Highlight [Save/edit] and press ▶.



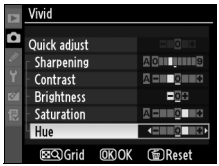
3 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight an existing Picture Control and press ▶, or press ⊛ to proceed to step 5 to save a copy of the highlighted Picture Control without further modification.



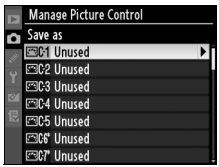
4 Edit the selected control.

See page 171 for more information. To abandon any changes and start over, press the 🗑 button. Press ⊛ when settings are complete.



5 Select a destination.

Choose a destination for the custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ▶.



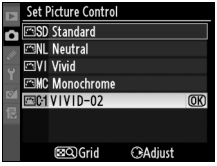
6 Name the Picture Control.

The text-entry dialog shown at right will be displayed. By default, new Picture Controls are named by adding a two-digit number (assigned automatically) to the name of the existing Picture Control. This name can be edited to create a new name as described below.

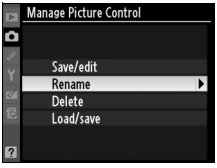
To move the cursor in the name area, press the button and press ◀ or ▶. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the 🗑 button.

Custom Picture Control names can be up to 19 characters long. Any characters after the 19th will be deleted.

After entering the name, press OK. The new Picture Control will appear in the Picture Control list.



Custom Picture Controls can be renamed at any time using the [Rename] option in the [Manage Picture Control] menu.



Custom Picture Controls

Custom Picture Controls are not affected by [Reset shooting menu] (pg. 293).

Custom Picture Controls do not have a [Quick adjust] option (pg. 171). Custom Picture Controls based on [Monochrome] have [Filter effects] and [Toning] options in place of [Saturation] and [Hue] controls.

The Original Picture Control Icon

The Nikon Picture Control on which the custom Picture Control is based is indicated by an icon in the top right corner of the edit display.

Original Picture Control icon

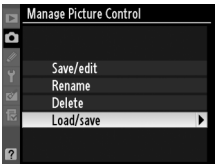
Sharing Custom Picture Controls

Custom Picture Controls created using ViewNX or optional software such as Capture NX can be copied to a memory card and loaded into the camera, or custom Picture Controls created with the camera can be copied to the memory card to be used in compatible cameras and software.

■■ *Copying Custom Picture Controls to the Camera*

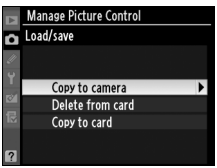
1 Select [Load/save].

In the [Manage Picture Control] menu, highlight [Load/save] and press ▶.



2 Select [Copy to camera].

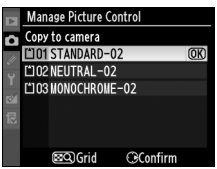
Highlight [Copy to camera] and press ▶.



3 Select a Picture Control.

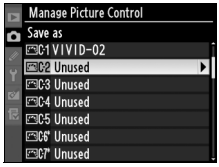
Highlight a custom Picture Control and either;

- press ▶ to view current Picture Control settings, or
- press ⊛ to proceed to Step 4.



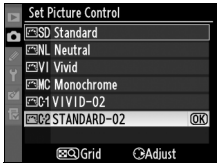
4 Select a destination.

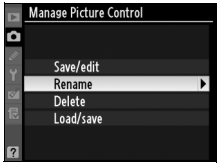
Choose a destination for the custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ▶.



5 Name the Picture Control.

Name the Picture Control as described on page 176. The new Picture Control will appear in the Picture Control list and can be renamed at any time using the [Rename] option in the [Manage Picture Control] menu.





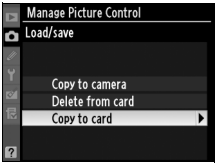
Use Slot 1

Slot 1 is used when saving custom Picture Controls to a memory card or copying custom Picture Controls to the camera. Cards in slot 2 can not be used.

■■ *Saving Custom Picture Controls to the Memory Card*

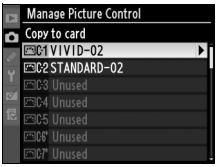
1 Select [Copy to card].

After displaying the [Load/save] menu as described in Step 1 on page 178, highlight [Copy to card] and press ▶.



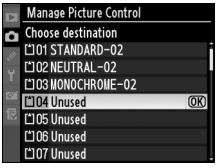
2 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight a custom Picture Control and press ▶.



3 Choose a destination.

Choose a destination from slots 1 through 99 and press ⊛ to save the selected Picture Control to the memory card. Any Picture Controls that may already have been saved to the selected slot will be overwritten.



Saving Custom Picture Controls

Up to 99 custom Picture Controls can be stored on the memory card at any one time. The memory card can only be used to store user-created custom Picture Controls. The Nikon Picture Controls supplied with the camera can not be copied to the memory card.

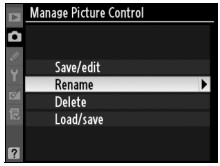
Managing Custom Picture Controls

Follow the steps below to rename or delete custom Picture Controls.

■■ *Renaming Custom Picture Controls*

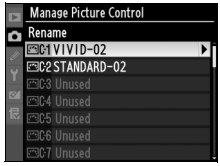
1 **Select [Rename].**

In the [Manage Picture Control] menu, highlight [Rename] and press ▶.



2 **Select a Picture Control.**

Highlight a custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ▶.



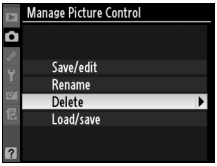
3 **Rename the Picture Control.**

Rename the Picture Control as described on page 176.

■■ *Deleting Custom Picture Controls from the Camera*

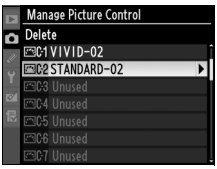
1 Select [Delete].

In the [Manage Picture Control] menu, highlight [Delete] and press ▶.



2 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight a custom Picture Control (C-1 through C-9) and press ▶.



3 Select [Yes].

Highlight [Yes] and press ⊛ to delete the selected Picture Control.

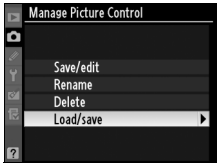
Nikon Picture Controls

The Nikon Picture Controls supplied with the camera ([Standard], [Neutral], [Vivid], and [Monochrome]) can not be renamed or deleted.

■■ *Deleting Custom Picture Controls from the Memory Card*

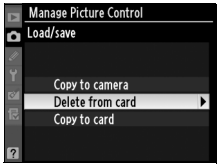
1 Select [Load/save].

In the [Manage Picture Control] menu, highlight [Load/save] and press ▶.



2 Select [Delete from card].

Highlight [Delete from card] and press ▶.

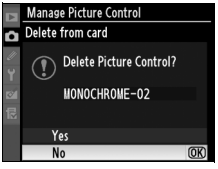


3 Select a Picture Control.

Highlight a custom Picture Control (slot1 through 99) and either;

- press ▶ to view current Picture Control settings, or

- press ⓚ to display confirmation dialog shown at right.



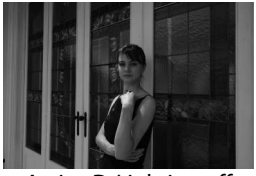
4 Select [Yes].

Highlight [Yes] and press ⓚ to delete the selected Picture Control.

Active D-Lighting

Active D-Lighting preserves details in highlights and shadows, creating photographs with natural contrast. Use for high contrast scenes, for example when photographing brightly lit outdoor scenery through a door or window or taking pictures of shaded subjects on a sunny day.

Active D-Lighting: High



Active D-Lighting off

Active D-Lighting: Normal

Active D-Lighting: Low

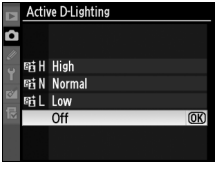
To use active D-lighting:

1 Select [Active D-Lighting].

In the shooting menu (pg. 290), highlight [Active D-Lighting] and press ▶.

2 Choose an option.

Highlight [Off], [Low], [Normal], or [High] and press ⊛.



☑ Active D-Lighting

Additional time is required to record images when Active D-lighting is on (pg. 425). Use matrix metering (pg. 114). Although exposure is in fact reduced to prevent loss of detail in highlights and shadows, highlights, underexposed areas, and mid-tones are automatically adjusted to prevent the resulting photograph from being underexposed. The [Brightness] and [Contrast] Picture Control settings (pg. 171) can not be adjusted while active D-lighting is in effect. Noise, distortion or banding may be visible at high ISO sensitivities. Note that Active D-Lighting is not available with sensitivities of HI 0.3 or higher.

☑ "Active D-Lighting" versus "D-Lighting"

The [Active D-Lighting] option in the shooting menu adjusts exposure before shooting to optimize the dynamic range, while the [D-Lighting] option in the retouch menu optimizes dynamic range in images after shooting.

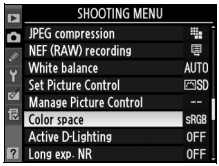
Color Space

The color space determines the gamut of colors available for color reproduction. Choose a color space according to how photographs will be processed on leaving the camera.

Option	Description
sRGB **sRGB** (default)	Choose for photographs that will be printed or used "as is," with no further modification.
Adobe **Adobe RGB**	This color space is capable of expressing a wider gamut of colors than sRGB, making it the preferred choice for images that will be extensively processed or retouched.

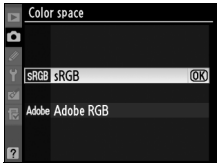
1 Select [Color space].

Highlight [Color space] in the shooting menu (pg. 290) and press ▶.



2 Select a color space.

Highlight the desired option and press ⊛.



Color Space

Color spaces define the correspondence between colors and the numeric values that represent them in a digital image file. The sRGB color space is widely used, while the Adobe RGB color space is typically used in publishing and commercial printing. sRGB is recommended when taking photographs that will be printed without modification or viewed in applications that do not support color management, or when taking photographs that will be printed with ExifPrint, the direct printing option on some household printers, or kiosk printing or other commercial print services. Adobe RGB photographs can also be printed using these options, but colors will not be as vivid.

JPEG photographs taken in the Adobe RGB color space are Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0 compliant; applications and printers that support Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0 will select the correct color space automatically. If the application or device does not support Exif 2.21 and DCF 2.0, select the appropriate color space manually. An ICC color profile is embedded in TIFF photographs taken in the Adobe RGB color space, allowing applications that support color management to automatically select the correct color space. For more information, see the documentation provided with the application or device.

Nikon Software

ViewNX (supplied) and Capture NX (available separately) automatically select the correct color space when opening photographs created with the D3.

Flash Photography

– Using Optional Flash Units

This chapter describes how to use the camera with optional flash units that support the Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS).

The Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS) ..... pg. 190

Compatible Flash Units ..... pg. 191

CLS-Compatible Flash Units ..... pg. 191

Other Flash Units ..... pg. 194

i-TTL Flash Control ..... pg. 196

Flash Modes ..... pg. 197

FV Lock ..... pg. 201

Flash Contacts ..... pg. 204

The Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS)

Nikon's advanced Creative Lighting System (CLS) offers improved communication between the camera and compatible flash units for improved flash photography. The Creative Lighting System supports the following features:

- **i-TTL flash control**: Improved through-the-lens (TTL) flash control for use with CLS (see page 196). Flash level is set using monitor pre-flashes to measure the light reflected by the subject, ensuring that the level is adjusted appropriately for ambient lighting.
- **Advanced Wireless Lighting**: Allows i-TTL flash control with remote wireless flash units.
- **FV lock** (pg. 201): Locks flash level at the metered value, allowing a series of photographs to be taken at the same flash level.
- **Auto FP High-Speed Sync** (pg. 200): Allows the flash to be used at the highest shutter speed supported by the camera, making it possible to choose the maximum aperture for reduced depth of field.

The CLS-compatible D3 can be used for flash photography when an optional Speedlight is mounted on the camera's accessory shoe. A flash can be used not only when natural lighting is inadequate, but also to fill in shadows, illuminate back-lit subjects, and even to add a catch light to the eyes of a portrait subject. See the Speedlight manual for details.

CLS-Compatible Flash Units

The D3 can be used with the following CLS-compatible flash units: the SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, SB-R200, and SU-800.

■ *The SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, and SB-R200*

The principal features of these flash units are listed below.

Feature \ Flash unit		SB-800	SB-600	SB-400	SB-R200 [1]
Guide No. [2]	ISO 100	38/125	30/98	21/69	10/32
	ISO 200	53/175	42/138	30/98	14/49
Auto power zoom		24–105 mm	24–85 mm	— [3]	— [4]
Wide panel		14 mm, 17 mm	14 mm	—	—
Head rotation		7 ° down, 90 ° up, 180 ° left, 90 ° right	90 ° up, 180 ° left, 90 ° right	90 ° up	60 ° down (toward lens light axis), 45 ° up (away from light axis)

1. Controlled remotely using optional SB-800 flash unit or SU-800 wireless Speedlight commander.
2. m/ft., 20 °C (68 °F), SB-800 and SB-600 at 35 mm zoom head position.
3. 27 mm zoom coverage.
4. 24 mm zoom coverage.

■ *SU-800 Wireless Speedlight Commander*

When mounted on a CLS-compatible camera, the SU-800 can be used as a commander for remote SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 flash units. The SU-800 itself is not equipped with a flash.

Guide Number

To calculate the range of the flash at full power, divide the Guide Number by the aperture. For example, at ISO 100 the SB-800 has a Guide Number of 38 m or 125 ft.; its range at an aperture of f/5.6 is 38÷5.6 or about 6.8 meters (or in feet, 125÷5.6=23 ft. 7 in.). For each twofold increase in ISO sensitivity, multiply the Guide Number by the square root of two (approximately 1.4).

The following features are available with the SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, SB-R200, and SU-800:

Flash mode/feature		Flash unit: SB-800	SB-600	SB-400	Advanced Wireless Lighting: Commander SB-800	Commander SU-800 [1]	Remote SB-800	Remote SB-600	Remote SB-R200
i-TTL	i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR	✔ [2]	✔ [2]	✔ [3]	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
AA	Auto aperture	✔ [4]	—	—	✔ [5]	✔ [5]	✔ [5]	—	—
A	Non-TTL auto	✔ [6]	—	—	✔ [5]	—	✔ [5]	—	—
GN	Range-priority manual	✔	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
M	Manual	✔	✔	—	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
RPT	Repeating flash	✔	—	—	✔	✔	✔	✔	—
Auto FP High-Speed Sync [7]		✔	✔	—	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
FV lock		✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
AF-assist for multi-area AF [8]		✔	✔	—	✔	✔	—	—	—
Flash Color Information Communication		✔	✔	✔	✔	—	—	—	—
REAR	Rear-curtain sync	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔
👁	Red-eye reduction	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	—	—	—
Auto zoom		✔	✔	—	✔	—	—	—	—

1 Only available when SU-800 is used to control other flash units.
2 Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is used with spot metering or when selected with flash unit.
3 Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is used with spot metering.
4 Selected with flash unit. Non-TTL auto (**A**) selected automatically if non-CPU lens is attached without specifying lens data using [Non-CPU lens data].
5 Auto aperture (**AA**) is used regardless of mode selected with flash unit. Non-TTL auto (**A**) selected automatically if non-CPU lens is attached without specifying lens data using [Non-CPU lens data].
6 Selected with flash unit.
7 Select [1/250 s (Auto FP)] for Custom Setting e1 ([Flash sync speed], pg. 325).
8 CPU lens required.

Modeling Illumination

CLS-compatible Speedlights such as the SB-800 and SB-600 emit a modeling flash when the camera depth-of-field preview button is pressed. This feature can be used with Advanced Wireless Lighting to preview the total lighting effect achieved with multiple flash units. Modeling illumination can be turned off using Custom Setting e3 [Modeling flash] (pg. 326).

Other Flash Units

The following flash units can be used in non-TTL auto and manual modes. If they are set to TTL, the camera shutter-release button will lock and no photographs can be taken.

Flash mode / Speedlight	SB-80DX, SB-28DX, SB-28, SB-26, SB-25, SB-24	SB-50DX	SB-30, SB-27 [1], SB-22s, SB-22, SB-20, SB-16B, SB-15	SB-23, SB-29 [2], SB-21B [2], SB-29S [2]
A Non-TTL auto	✔	—	✔	—
M Manual	✔	✔	✔	✔
Repeating flash	✔	—	—	—
REAR Rear-curtain sync	✔	✔	✔	✔

1 Flash mode is automatically set to TTL and shutter-release is disabled. Set flash unit to **A** (non-TTL auto flash).

2 Autofocus is only available with AF-Micro lenses (60 mm, 105 mm, or 200 mm).

✔ Notes on Optional Speedlights

Refer to the Speedlight manual for detailed instructions. If the Speedlight supports the Nikon Creative Lighting System, refer to the section on CLS-compatible digital SLR cameras. The D3 is not included in the "digital SLR" category in the SB-80DX, SB-28DX, and SB-50DX manuals.

i-TTL flash control can be used at ISO sensitivities between 200 and 6400. At values over 6400, the desired results may not be achieved at some ranges or aperture settings. If the flash-ready indicator blinks for about three seconds after a photograph is taken, the flash has fired at full power and the photograph may be underexposed.

Auto power zoom is available with SB-800 and SB-600 flash units. The SB–800, SB-600, and SB-400 provide red-eye reduction. When used with AF lenses with focal lengths of 24–105 mm, the SB-800, SB-600, and SU-800 provide active AF assist illumination for the following focus points:

24–34 mm AF lens		**35–49 mm AF lens**	
50–105 mm AF lens			

In programmed auto, the maximum aperture (minimum f-number) is limited according to sensitivity (ISO equivalency), as shown below:

Maximum aperture at ISO equivalent of:					
200	**400**	**800**	**1600**	**3200**	**6400**
5	5.6	7.1	8	10	11

For each one-step increase in sensitivity (e.g., from 200 to 400), aperture is stopped down by half an f-stop. If the maximum aperture of the lens is smaller than given above, the maximum value for aperture will be the maximum aperture of the lens.

When an SC-series 17, 28, or 29 sync cable is used for off-camera flash photography, correct exposure may not be achieved in i-TTL mode. We recommend that you choose spot metering to select standard i-TTL flash control. Take a test shot and view the results in the monitor.

In i-TTL, use the flash panel or bounce adapter provided with the flash unit. Do not use other panels such as diffusion panels, as this may produce incorrect exposure.

☑ Use Only Nikon Flash Accessories

Use only Nikon Speedlights. Negative voltages or voltages over 250 V applied to the accessory shoe could not only prevent normal operation, but damage the sync circuitry of the camera or flash. Before using a Nikon Speedlight not listed in this section, contact a Nikon-authorized service representative for more information.

i-TTL Flash Control

When a CLS-compatible flash unit is set to TTL, the camera automatically selects one of the following types of flash control:

i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR: Flash unit emits series of nearly invisible preflashes (monitor preflashes) immediately before main flash. Preflashes reflected from objects in all areas of frame are picked up by 1,005-segment RGB sensor and are analyzed in combination with range information from matrix metering system to adjust flash output for natural balance between main subject and ambient background lighting. If type G or D lens is used, distance information is included when calculating flash output. Precision of calculation can be increased for non-CPU lenses by providing lens data (focal length and maximum aperture; see pg. 220). Not available when spot metering is used.

Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR: Flash output adjusted to bring lighting in frame to standard level; brightness of background is not taken into account. Recommended for shots in which main subject is emphasized at expense of background details, or when exposure compensation is used. Standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR is activated automatically when spot metering is selected.

Flash Modes

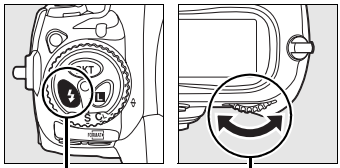
The camera supports the following flash modes:

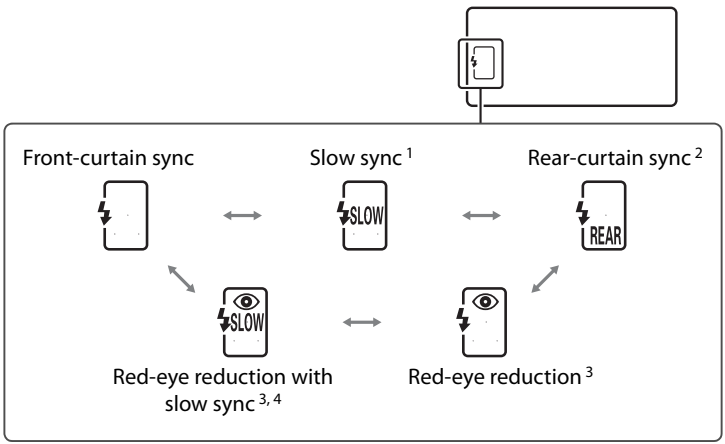
Flash mode	Description
Front-curtain sync	This mode is recommended for most situations. In programmed auto and aperture-priority auto modes, shutter speed will automatically be set to values between 1/250 and 1/60 s (1/8,000 to 1/60 s with Auto FP High-Speed Sync).
Slow sync	Flash is combined with shutter speeds as slow as 30 s to capture both subject and background at night or under dim light. This mode is only available in exposure modes P and A. Tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.
Rear-curtain sync	In exposure modes S and M, flash fires just before the shutter closes. Use to create effect of a stream of light behind moving objects. In exposure modes P and A, slow rear-curtain sync is used to capture both subject and background. Tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.
Red-eye reduction	In this mode (available only with SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400), red-eye reduction pre-flash lights for approximately one second before main flash. Pupils in subject's eyes to contract, reducing "red-eye" effect sometimes caused by flash. Owing to one-second shutter-release delay, this mode is not recommended with moving subjects or in other situations in which quick shutter response is required. Avoid moving camera while red-eye reduction pre-flash is lit.

Flash mode	Description
Red-eye reduction with slow sync	Combines red-eye reduction with slow sync. Use for portraits taken against a backdrop of night scenery. Available only in exposure modes P and A. Tripod is recommended to prevent blurring caused by camera shake.

■■ *Choosing a Flash Mode*

To choose the flash mode, press the ϟ button and rotate the main command dial until the desired flash mode is selected in the top control panel:





1 Available only in exposure modes P and A. In modes S and M, front-curtain sync is selected when ϟ button is released.

2 In exposure modes P and A, flash-sync mode will be set to slow rear-curtain sync when the ϟ button is released.

3 ◉ icon blinks if flash unit does not support red-eye reduction.

4 Red-eye reduction with slow sync is available only in exposure modes P and A. In modes S and M, red-eye reduction is selected when the ϟ button is released.

Studio Flash Systems

Rear-curtain sync can not be used with studio flash systems, as the correct synchronization can not be obtained.

Shutter Speed and Aperture

Shutter speed and aperture can be set as follows when a Speedlight is used:

Mode	Shutter speed	Aperture	See page
P	Set automatically by camera (1/250 s–1/60 s) [1, 2]	Set automatically by camera	118
S	Value selected by user (1/250 s–30 s) [2]		120
A	Set automatically by camera (1/250 s–1/60 s) [1, 2]	Value selected by user [3]	122
M	Value selected by user (1/250 s–30 s) [2]		124

1 Shutter speed may be set as slow as 30 s in slow sync, slow rear-curtain sync, and slow sync with red-eye reduction flash modes.

2 Speeds as fast as 1/8,000 s are available with optional SB-800 and SB-600 flash units when [1/250 s (Auto FP)] is selected for Custom Setting e1 ([Flash sync speed], pg. 325).

3 Flash range varies with aperture and ISO sensitivity. When setting aperture in exposure modes A and M, consult the table of flash ranges provided with optional Speedlight.

See Also

For information on choosing a flash sync speed, see Custom Setting e1 ([Flash sync speed], pg. 325). For information on choosing the slowest shutter speed available when using the flash, see Custom Setting e2 ([Flash shutter speed], pg. 326).

FV Lock

This feature is used to lock flash output, allowing photographs to be recomposed without changing the flash level and ensuring that flash output is appropriate to the subject even when the subject is not positioned in the center of the frame. Flash output is adjusted automatically for any changes in ISO sensitivity, and aperture. FV lock is available with CLS compatible flash units only.

To use FV lock:

1 Assign FV lock to the Fn button.

Select [FV lock] for Custom Setting f4 ([Assign FUNC. button] > [FUNC. button press], pg. 331).

2 Attach a CLS-compatible flash unit.

Mount an SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, or SU-800 on the camera accessory shoe.

3 Set the flash unit to TTL or AA mode.

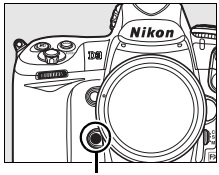
Turn the flash unit on and set the flash mode to TTL or AA. See the Speedlight instruction manual for details.

4 Focus.

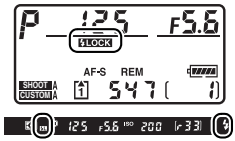
Position the subject in the center of the frame and press the shutter-release button halfway to focus.

5 Lock flash level.

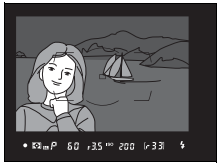
After confirming that the flash ready indicator (ϟ) is displayed in the viewfinder, press the **Fn** button. The flash will emit a monitor preflash to determine the appropriate flash level. Flash output will be locked at this level and FV lock icons (FLOCK and FL) will appear in the top control panel and viewfinder .



Fn button



6 Recompose the photograph.



7 Take the photograph.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to shoot. If desired, additional pictures can be taken without releasing FV lock.

8 Release FV lock.

Press the **Fn** button to release FV lock. Confirm that the FV lock icons (FV LOCK and FV) are no longer displayed in the top control panel and viewfinder.

Metering

The metering areas for FV lock are as follows:

Speedlight	Flash mode	Metered area
Stand-alone flash unit	i-TTL	5-mm circle in center of frame
	AA	Area metered by flash exposure meter
Used with other flash units (Advanced Wireless Lighting)	i-TTL	Entire frame
	AA	Area metered by flash exposure meter
	A (master flash)	

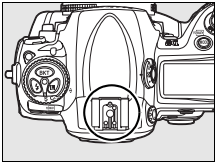
See Also

For information on using the depth-of-field preview or **AE-L/AF-L** button for FV lock, see Custom Setting f5 ([Assign preview button], pg. 337) or Custom Setting f6 ([Assign AE-L/AF-L button], pg. 338).

Flash Contacts

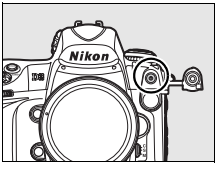
The camera is equipped with an accessory shoe for attaching optional flash units directly to the camera and a sync terminal that allows flash units to be connected via a sync cable. When an optional flash unit is attached, the flash will fire whenever the shutter is released.

■■ *The Accessory Shoe*



Use the accessory shoe to mount optional flash units directly on the camera without a sync cable (pg. 191). The accessory shoe is equipped with a safety lock for Speedlights with a locking pin, such as the SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400.

■■ *The Sync Terminal*



A sync cable can be connected to the sync terminal as required. Do not connect another flash unit via a sync cable when performing rear-curtain sync flash photography with a flash unit mounted on the camera accessory shoe.

Other Shooting Options

This chapter covers restoring default settings, making multiple exposures, interval timer photography, and using GPS units and non-CPU lenses.

Two-Button Reset: Restoring Default Settings ..... pg. 206

Multiple Exposure ..... pg. 208

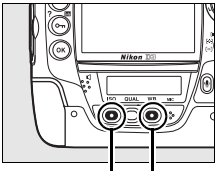
Interval Timer Photography ..... pg. 213

Non-CPU Lenses ..... pg. 220

Using a GPS Unit ..... pg. 223

Two-Button Reset: Restoring Default Settings

The camera settings listed below can be restored to default values by holding the **ISO** and **WB** buttons down together for more than two seconds (these buttons are marked by a green dot). The control panels turn off briefly while settings are reset.



ISO button **WB button**

Option	Default
Focus point	Center
Exposure mode	Programmed auto
Flexible program	Off
Exposure compensation	Off
AE hold	Off [1]
Aperture lock	Off

Option	Default
Shutter-speed lock	Off
Bracketing	Off [2]
Flash mode	Front-curtain sync
FV lock	Off
Multiple exposure	Off

1 Custom Setting f6 ([Assign AE-L/AF-L button], pg. 338) is unaffected.
2 Number of shots is reset to zero. Bracketing increment is reset to 1EV (exposure/flash bracketing) or 1 (white balance bracketing).

The following shooting-menu options will also be reset. Only settings in the bank currently selected using the [Shooting menu bank] option will be reset (pg. 291). Settings in the remaining banks are unaffected.

Option	Default	Option	Default
Image quality	JPEG Normal	White balance	Auto *
Image size	Large	ISO sensitivity	200

* Fine-tuning off.

If the current Picture Control has been modified, existing settings for the Picture Control will also be restored.

See Also

See page 418 for a list of default settings.

Multiple Exposure

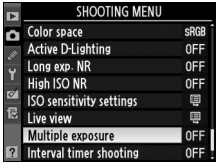
Follow the steps below to record a series of two to ten exposures in a single photograph. Multiple exposures can be recorded at any image quality setting, and produce results with colors noticeably better than photographs combined in an imaging application because they make use of RAW data from the camera image sensor.

■■ *Creating a Multiple Exposure*

Note that at default settings, shooting will end and a multiple exposure will be recorded automatically if no operations are performed for 30 s.

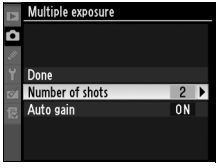
1 **Select [Multiple exposure].**

Highlight [Multiple exposure] in the shooting menu (pg. 290) and press ▶.



2 **Select [Number of shots].**

Highlight [Number of shots] and press ▶.

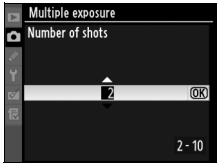


Extended Recording Times

For an interval between exposures of more than 30 s, select [On] for the [Image review] (pg. 287) option in the playback menu and extend the monitor-off delay using Custom Setting c4 ([Monitor off delay], pg. 318). The maximum interval between exposures is 30 s longer than the option selected for Custom Setting c4.

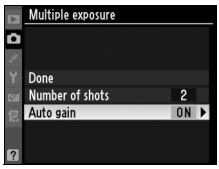
3 Select the number of shots.

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the number of exposures that will be combined to form a single photograph and press ⊛.



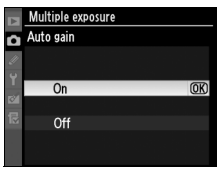
4 Select [Auto gain].

Highlight [Auto gain] and press ▶.



5 Set gain.

Highlight one of the following options and press ⊛.

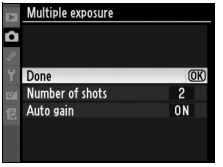


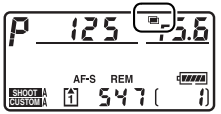
Option	Description
On (default)	Gain adjusted according to number of exposures actually recorded (gain for each exposure is set to 1/2 for 2 exposures, 1/3 for 3 exposures, etc.).
Off	Gain is not adjusted when recording multiple exposure. Recommended if background is dark.

6 Select [Done].

Highlight [Done] and press ⊛.

A ▣ icon will be displayed in the top control panel. To exit without taking a multiple exposure, select [Multiple exposure] > [Reset] in the shooting menu.

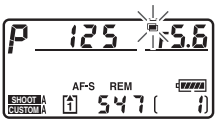




7 Frame a photograph, focus, and shoot.

In continuous high-speed and continuous low-speed release modes (pg. 86), the camera will record all exposures in a single burst. In single-frame release mode, one photograph will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed; continue shooting until all exposures have been recorded (for information on interrupting a multiple exposure before all photographs are recorded, see page 212).

The ▣ icon will blink until shooting ends. When shooting ends, multiple exposure mode will end and the ▣ icon will no longer be displayed. Repeat steps 1–7 to take additional multiple exposures.



Multiple Exposure

Do not remove or replace the memory card while recording a multiple exposure.

Live view (pg. 90) can not be used to record multiple exposures.

The information listed in the playback photo information display (including date of recording and camera orientation) is for the first shot in the multiple exposure.

If no operations are performed for 30 s after the monitor has turned off during playback or menu operations, shooting will end and a multiple exposure will be created from the exposures that have been recorded to that point.

Voice Memos

The camera stores only the last voice memo created during a multiple exposure.

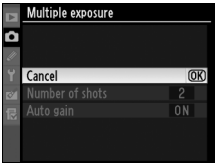
Interval Timer Photography

If interval timer photography is activated before the first exposure is taken, the camera will record exposures at the selected interval until the number of exposures specified in the multiple exposure menu have been taken (the number of shots listed in the interval timer shooting menu is ignored). These exposures will then be recorded as a single photograph and multiple exposure mode and interval timer shooting will end. Cancelling multiple exposure cancels interval timer shooting.

Other Settings

While multiple exposure mode is in effect, memory cards can not be formatted and the following can not be changed: image area, bracketing, and shooting menu options other than [White balance] and [Intvl timer shooting] (note that [Intvl timer shooting] can only be adjusted before the first exposure is taken). The [Lock mirror up for cleaning] and [Dust off ref photo] options in the setup menu can not used.

▮▮ *Interrupting Multiple Exposures*



Selecting [Multiple exposure] in the shooting menu while a multiple exposure is being recorded displays the options shown at right. To interrupt a multiple exposure before the specified number of exposures have been taken, highlight [Cancel] and press ⊛. If shooting ends before the specified number of exposures have been taken, a multiple exposure will be created from the exposures that have been recorded to that point. If [Auto gain] is on, gain will be adjusted to reflect the number of exposures actually recorded. Note that shooting will end automatically if:

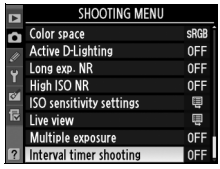
- A two-button reset is performed (pg. 206)
- The camera is turned off
- The battery is exhausted
- Pictures are deleted

Interval Timer Photography

The camera is equipped to take photographs automatically at preset intervals.

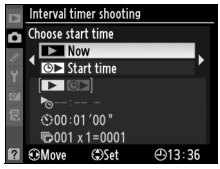
1 Select [Interval timer shooting].

Highlight [Interval timer shooting] in the shooting menu (pg. 290) and press ▶.



2 Select a starting trigger.

Highlight one of the following [Choose start time] options and press ▶.



- **[Now]**: Shooting begins about 3 s after settings are completed (proceed to Step 4).
- **[Start time]**: Choose a start time (see Step 3).

☑ Before Shooting

Choose single-frame (**S**), continuous low speed (**CL**), or continuous high speed (**CH**) release mode when using the interval timer. Before beginning interval timer photography, take a test shot at current settings and view the results in the monitor. Remember that the camera will focus before each shot—no shots will be taken if the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF.

Before choosing a starting time, select [World time] in the setup menu and make sure that the camera clock is set to the correct time and date (pg. 40).

Use of a tripod is recommended. Mount the camera on a tripod before shooting begins.

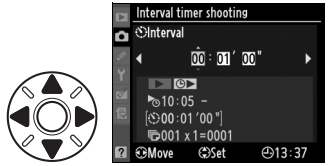
To ensure that shooting is not interrupted, be sure the battery is fully charged.

3 Choose a start time.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight hours or minutes; press ▲ or ▼ to change. The starting time is not displayed if [Now] is selected for [Choose start time].

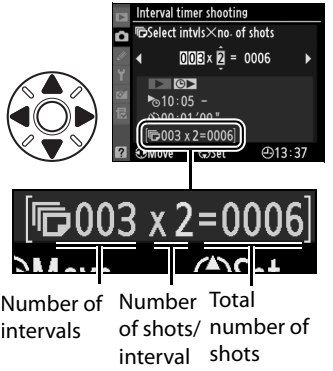
4 Choose an interval.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight hours, minutes, or seconds; press ▲ or ▼ to change. Note that the camera will not be able to take photographs at the specified interval if it is shorter than the shutter speed or the time required to record images.

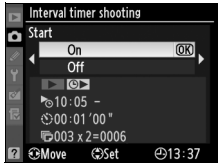


5 Choose the number of intervals and number of shots per interval.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight number of intervals or number of shots; press ▲ or ▼ to change. The total number of shots that will be taken is displayed to the right.



6 Start shooting.

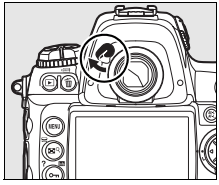


Highlight [Start] > [On] and press OK (to return to the shooting menu without starting the interval timer, highlight [Start] > [Off] and press OK). The first series of shots will be taken at the specified starting time. Shooting will continue at the selected interval until all shots have been taken.

A message will be displayed in the monitor one minute before each series of shots is taken. If shooting can not proceed at current settings (for example, if a shutter speed of **buLb** is currently selected in manual exposure mode or the start time is in less than a minute), a warning will be displayed in the monitor.

The Viewfinder Eyepiece

In exposure modes other than manual, close the viewfinder eyepiece shutter to prevent light entering via the viewfinder from interfering with exposure.



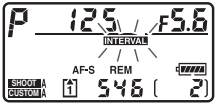
Out of Memory

If the memory card is full, the interval timer will remain active but no pictures will be taken. Resume shooting (pg. 217) after deleting some pictures or turning the camera off and inserting another memory card.

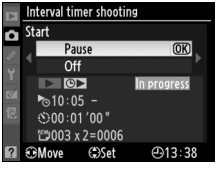
Bracketing

Adjust bracketing settings before starting interval timer photography. If exposure and/or flash bracketing is active while interval timer photography is in effect, the camera will take the number of shots in the bracketing program at each interval, regardless of the number of shots specified in the interval timer menu. If white balance bracketing is active while interval timer photography is in effect, the camera will take one shot at each interval and process it to create the number of copies specified in the bracketing program.

During Shooting



During interval timer photography, the INTERVAL icon in the top control panel will blink. Immediately before the next shooting interval begins, the shutter speed display will show the number of intervals remaining, and the aperture display will show the number of shots remaining in the current interval. At other times, the number of intervals remaining and the number of shots in each interval can be viewed by pressing the shutter-release button halfway (once the button is released, the shutter speed and aperture will be displayed until the exposure meters turn off).



To view current interval timer settings, select [Interval timer shooting] between shots. While interval timer photography is in progress, the interval timer menu will show the starting time, the current time, and the number of intervals and shots remaining. None of these items can be changed while interval timer photography is in progress.

❚❚ *Pausing Interval Timer Photography*

Interval time photography can be paused by:

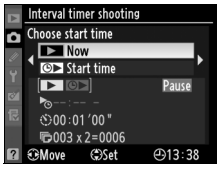
- Pressing the OK button between intervals
- Highlighting [Start] > [Pause] in the interval timer menu and pressing OK
- Turning the camera off and then on again (if desired, the memory card can be replaced while the camera is off)
- Selecting live view (LV), self-timer (⏲), or mirror-up (**MUP**) release modes

To resume shooting:

---

1 **Choose a new starting trigger.**

Choose a new starting trigger and start time as described on page 213.



---

2 **Resume shooting.**

Highlight [Start] > [Restart] and press OK. Note that if interval timer photography was paused during shooting, any shots remaining in the current interval will be canceled.

■■ *Interrupting Interval Timer Photography*

Interval timer shooting will end automatically if the battery is exhausted. Interval timer photography can also be ended by:

- Selecting [Start] > [Off] in the interval timer menu
- Performing a two button reset (pg. 206)
- Selecting [Reset shooting menu] in the shooting menu (pg. 293)
- Changing bracketing settings (pg. 134)

Normal shooting will resume when interval timer photography ends.

■■ *No Photograph*

Photographs will not be taken if the previous photograph is yet to be taken, the memory buffer or memory card is full, or the camera is unable to focus in single-servo AF (note that the camera focuses again before each shot).

Release Mode

Regardless of the release mode selected, the camera will take the specified number of shots at each interval. In **CH** (continuous high speed) mode, photographs will be taken at a rate of nine shots per second or, if [DX format (24 × 16)] is selected for [Image area], at the frame rate selected for Custom Setting d2 [Shooting speed] (pg. 320) > [Continuous high-speed]. In **S** (single frame) and **CL** (continuous low-speed), photographs will be taken at the rate chosen for Custom Setting d2 [Shooting speed] (pg. 320) > [Continuous low-speed].

Using the Monitor

Pictures can be played back and shooting and menu settings can be adjusted freely while interval timer photography is in progress. The monitor will turn off automatically about four seconds before each interval.

Shooting Menu Banks

Changes to interval timer settings apply to all shooting menu banks (pg. 291). If shooting menu settings are reset using the [Reset shooting menu] item in the shooting menu (pg. 290), interval timer settings will be reset as follows:

- Choose start time: Now
- Interval: 00:01':00"
- Number of intervals: 1
- Number of shots: 1
- Start shooting: Off

Non-CPU Lenses

By specifying lens data (lens focal length and maximum aperture), the user can gain access to a variety of CPU lens functions when using a non-CPU lens. If the focal length of the lens is known:

- Automatic power zoom can be used with SB-800 and SB-600 Speedlights (available separately)
- Lens focal length is listed (with an asterisk) in the playback photo info display

When the maximum aperture of the lens is known:

- The aperture value is displayed in the top control panel and viewfinder
- Flash level is adjusted for changes in aperture
- Aperture is listed (with an asterisk) in the playback photo info display

Specifying both the focal length and maximum aperture of the lens:

- Enables color matrix metering (note that it may be necessary to use center-weighted or spot metering to achieve accurate results with some lenses, including Reflex-Nikkor lenses)
- Improves the precision of center-weighted and spot metering and i-TTL balanced fill-flash for digital SLR

Focal Length Not Listed

If the correct focal length is not listed, choose the closest value greater than the actual focal length of the lens.

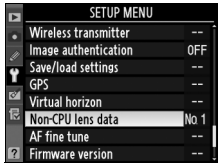
Zoom Lenses

Lens data are not adjusted when non-CPU lenses are zoomed in or out. After changing the zoom position, select new values for lens focal length and maximum aperture.

■■ *The Non-CPU Lens Data Menu*

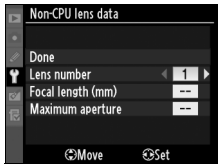
1 Select [Non-CPU lens data].

Highlight [Non-CPU lens data] in the setup menu (pg. 344) and press ▶.



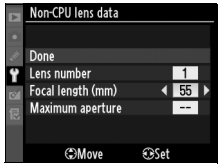
2 Select a lens number.

Highlight [Lens number] and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a lens number between 1 and 9.



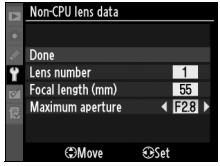
3 Select a focal length.

Highlight [Focal length (mm)] and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a focal length between 6 and 4,000 mm.

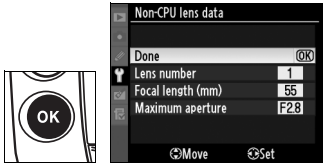


4 Select a maximum aperture.

Highlight [Maximum aperture] and press ◀ or ▶ to choose a maximum aperture between f/1.2 and f/22. The maximum aperture for teleconverters is the combined maximum aperture of the teleconverter and lens.



5 Select [Done].



Highlight [Done] and press ⊛. The specified focal length and aperture will be stored under the chosen lens number. This combination of focal length and aperture can be recalled at any time by selecting the lens number using camera controls as described below.

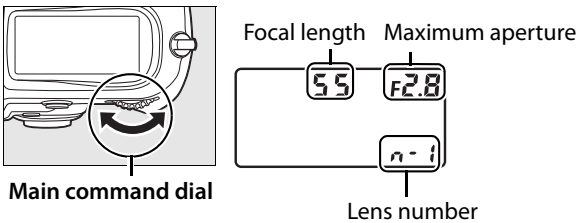
■ *Choosing a Lens Number Using Camera Controls*

1 Assign non-CPU lens number selection to a camera control.

Select [Choose non-CPU lens number] as the "+command dials" option for a camera control in the Custom Settings menu. Non-CPU lens number selection can be assigned to the **Fn** button (Custom Setting f4, [Assign FUNC. button], pg. 331), the depth-of-field preview button (Custom Setting f5, [Assign preview button], pg. 337), or the **AE-L/AF-L** button (Custom Setting f6, [Assign AE-L/AF-L button], pg. 338).

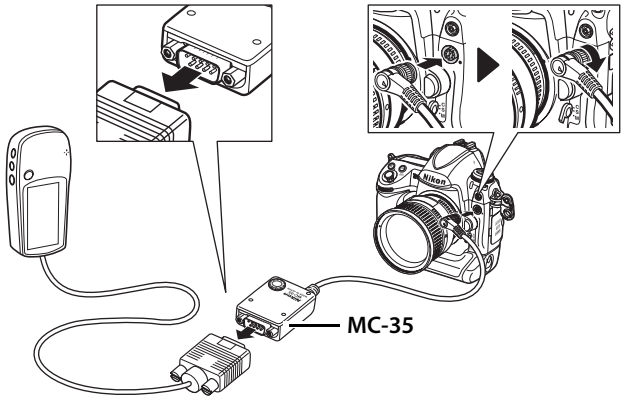
2 Use the selected control to choose a lens number.

Press the selected button and rotate the main command dial until the desired lens number is displayed in the top control panel.

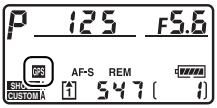


Using a GPS Unit

Optional Garmin GPS units that conform to version 2.01 or 3.01 of the National Marine Electronics Association NMEA0183 data format can be connected to the camera's ten-pin remote terminal using an MC-35 GPS adapter cord (available separately; pg. 388), allowing information on the camera's current position to be recorded when photographs are taken. Operation has been confirmed with Garmin eTrex and Garmin geko series devices equipped with a PC interface cable connector. These devices connect to the MC-35 using a cable with a D-sub 9-pin connector provided by the manufacturer of the GPS device. See the MC-35 instruction manual for details. Before turning the camera on, set the GPS device to NMEA mode (4800 baud).

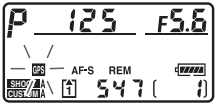


When the camera establishes communication with a GPS device, a GPS icon will be displayed in the top control panel. Photo information for pictures taken while the GPS icon is displayed will include an additional page (pg. 238) recording the current latitude, longitude, altitude, Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), and heading. If no data are received from the GPS unit for two seconds, the GPS icon will clear from the display and the camera will stop recording GPS information.



GPS Data

GPS data are only recorded when the GPS icon is displayed. Confirm that the GPS icon is displayed in the top control panel before shooting. A flashing GPS icon indicates that the GPS device is searching for a signal; pictures taken while the GPS icon is flashing will not include GPS data.



■■ *Setup Menu Options*

The [GPS] item in the setup menu contains the options listed below.

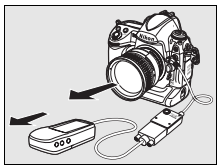
- **[Auto meter off]**: Choose whether or not the exposure meters will turn off automatically when a GPS unit is attached.

Option	Description
Enable (default)	Exposure meters will turn off automatically if no operations are performed for the period specified in Custom Setting c2 [Auto meter-off delay]. This reduces the drain on the battery but may prevent GPS data from being recorded if the shutter-release button is pressed all the way down without pausing.
Disable	Exposure meters will not turn off while a GPS unit is connected; GPS data will always be recorded.

- **[Position]**: This item is only available if a GPS device is connected, when it displays the current latitude, longitude, altitude, Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), and heading as reported by the GPS device.

Heading

The heading is only recorded if the GPS device is equipped with a digital compass. Keep the GPS device pointing in the same direction as the lens and at least 20 cm (8 in.) from the camera.



Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)

UTC data is provided by the GPS device and is independent of the camera clock.

More About Playback

– Playback Options

This chapter describes how to play back photographs and details the operations that can be performed during playback.

Full-Frame Playback..... pg. 228

Photo Information ..... pg. 231

Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback ..... pg. 241

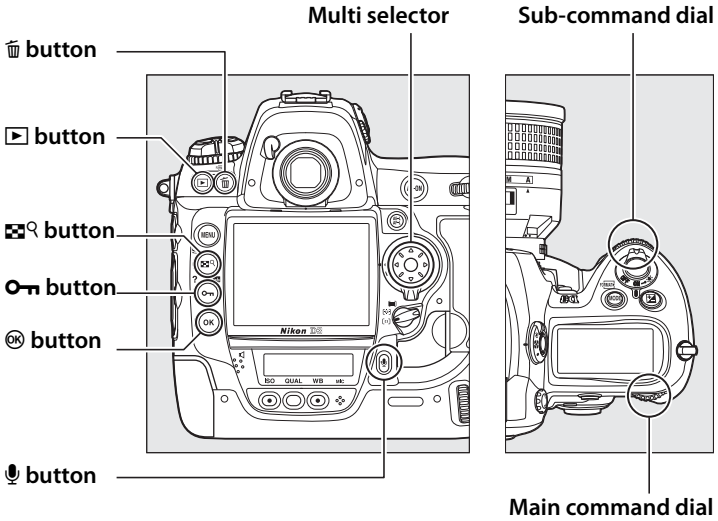
Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom ..... pg. 243

Protecting Photographs from Deletion ..... pg. 244

Deleting Individual Photographs..... pg. 245

Full-Frame Playback

To play photographs back, press the ▶ button. The most recent photograph will be displayed in the monitor.



Rotate tall

To display "tall" (portrait-orientation) photographs in tall orientation, select [On] for the [Rotate tall] option in the playback menu (pg. 287)

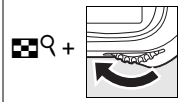
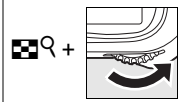
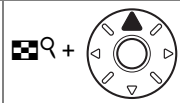
To	Use	Description
View additional photographs		Press ▶to view photographs in order recorded, ◀ to view photographs in reverse order.
View photo information		Press ▲ or ▼ to view information about current photograph (pg. 231).
View thumbnails		See page 241 for more information on the thumbnail display.
Zoom in on photograph		See page 243 for more information on playback zoom.
Delete images	🗑	Confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press 🗑 again to delete photo (pg. 245).
Record/play voice memo	🎙	If voice memo has not been recorded, voice memo will be recorded while 🎙 button is pressed. If voice memo has been recorded, pressing 🎙 button will start playback (pg. 248).
Change protect status	O-n	To protect image, or to remove protection from protected image, press O-n button (pg. 244).
View images on other memory card		If two memory cards are inserted, choose memory card from which pictures are played back (pg. 230).
Return to shooting mode	/ ▶	Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	MENU	See page 277 for more information.

Image Review

When [On] is selected for [Image review] in the playback menu (pg. 287), photographs are automatically displayed in the monitor for about 20 s (the default setting) after shooting. In single-frame, self-timer, and mirror-up release modes, photographs are displayed one at a time as they are taken. In continuous release mode, display begins when shooting ends, with the first photograph in the current series displayed.

Two Memory Cards

If two memory cards are inserted, holding the ⊡Q button and pressing ▲ in full-frame or thumbnail playback will display the menu shown at right. Highlight the desired slot and press ⊛. The same method can be used to choose a slot when selecting images for operations in the playback (pg. 278) or retouch menus (pg. 360) or when choosing an image as the source for preset white balance (pg. 160).

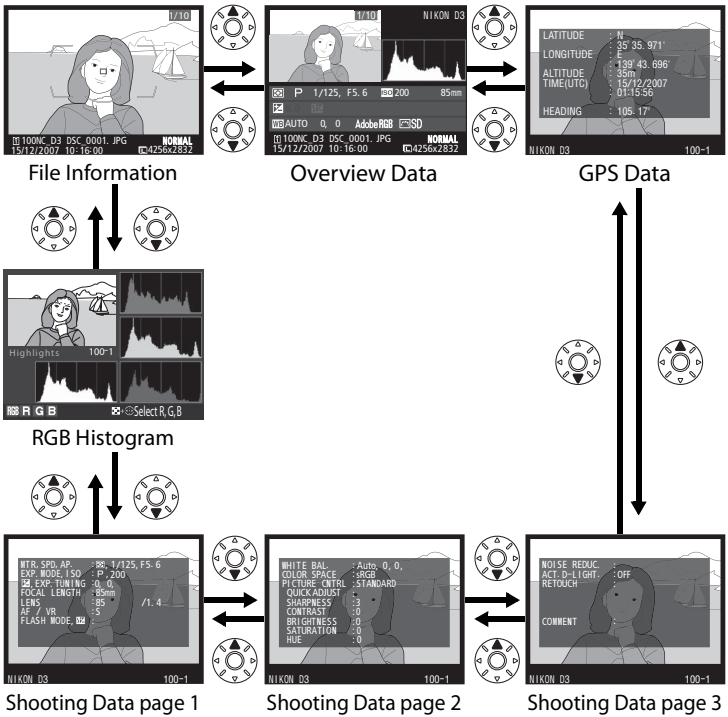
See Also

For information on choosing how long the monitor will remain on when no operations are performed, see Custom Setting c4 [Monitor off delay] (pg. 318).

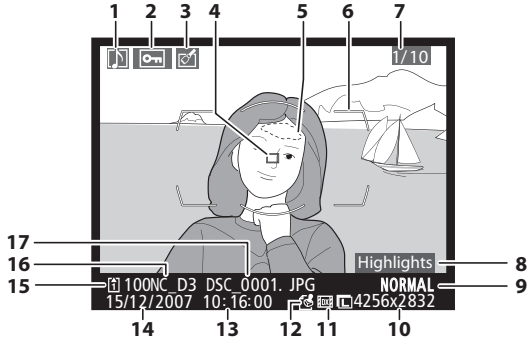
The roles of the multi selector buttons can be reversed, so that the ▲ and ▼ buttons display other images and the ◀ and ▶ buttons control photo information. See Custom Setting f3 [Photo info/playback] (pg. 331) for details.

Photo Information

Photo information is superimposed on images displayed in full-frame playback. There are up to 7 pages of information for each photo. Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through photo information as shown below. Note that shooting data are only displayed if [Data] is selected for [Display mode] (pg. 282), while the RGB histogram page is only displayed if [RGB histogram] is selected for [Display mode]. GPS data are only displayed if a GPS device was used when the photo was taken.



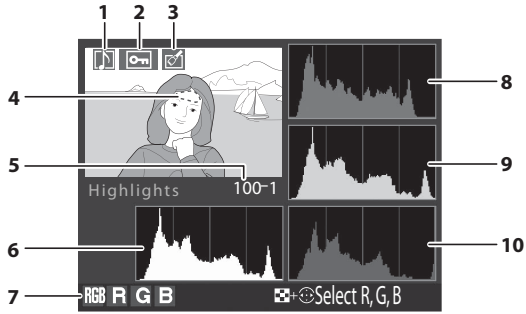
File Information



1	Voice memo icon 248	**10**	Image size 69
2	Protect status 244	**11**	Image area [3] 60
3	Retouch indicator 360	**12**	Image authentication 354
4	Focus point [1] 282	**13**	Time of recording 39
5	Image highlights [2] 282	**14**	Date of recording 39
6	AF area brackets 47, 95	**15**	Slot number 42
7	Frame number/ total number of frames	**16**	Folder name 293
8	Highlight display indicator [1] 282	**17**	File name 296
9	Image quality 65		

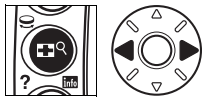
1 Displayed only if [Focus point] is selected for [Display mode] (pg. 282).
2 Image highlights (areas of the frame that may be overexposed) are indicated by a flashing border. Displayed only if [Highlights] is selected for [Display mode] (pg. 282).
3 DX is displayed if [DX format (24 × 16)] was selected for the [Image area] option (pg. 60) in the shooting menu, 5:4 if [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] was selected. No icon is displayed when [FX format (36 × 24)] is selected.

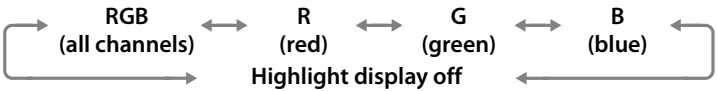
■■ *RGB Histogram* [1]



1 Voice memo icon 248
2 Protect status 244
3 Retouch indicator 360
4 Image highlights (areas of image that may be overexposed) are marked by a flashing border. [2]
5 Folder number–frame number [3] 293
6 Histogram (RGB channel) [4]. In all histograms, horizontal axis gives pixel brightness, vertical axis number of pixels.
7 Current channel [2]
8 Histogram (red channel) [4]
9 Histogram (green channel) [4]
10 Histogram (blue channel) [4]

1 Displayed only if [RGB histogram] is selected for [Display mode] (pg. 282).
2 Highlights can be displayed separately for each color channel. Press ◀ or ▶ while pressing ⊡Q button to cycle through channels as follows:

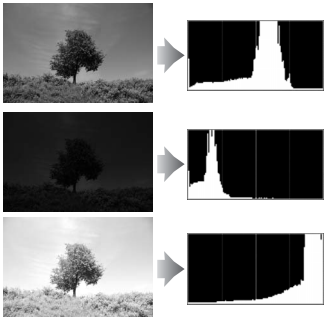




3 Displayed in yellow with image area icon if [DX format (24 × 16)] (DX) or [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] (5:4) was selected for the [Image area] option (pg. 60) in the shooting menu.

4 Some sample histograms are shown below:

- If the image contains objects with a wide range of brightnesses, the distribution of tones will be relatively even.
- If the image is dark, tone distribution will be shifted to the left.
- If the image is bright, tone distribution will be shifted to the right.

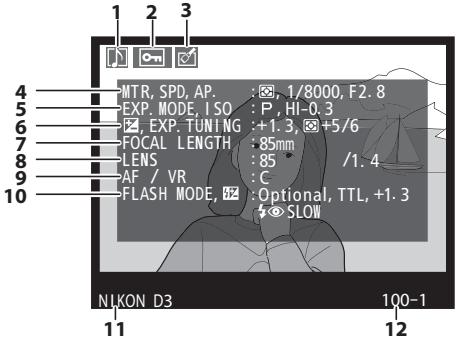


Increasing exposure compensation shifts the distribution of tones to the right, while decreasing exposure compensation shifts the distribution to the left. Histograms can provide a rough idea of overall exposure when bright ambient lighting makes it difficult to see photographs in the monitor.

Histograms

Camera histograms are intended as a guide only and may differ from those displayed in imaging applications.

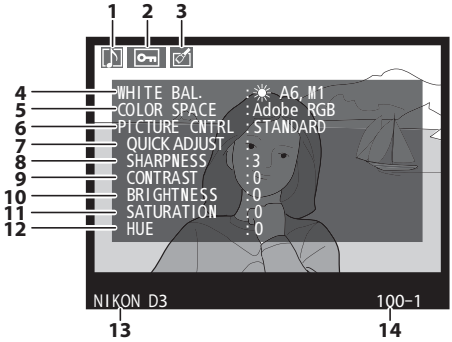
■■ *Shooting Data Page 1* [1]



1 Voice memo icon 248
2 Protect status 244
3 Retouch indicator 360
4 Metering method 114
Shutter speed 120, 124
Aperture 122, 124
5 Exposure mode 116
ISO sensitivity [2] 108
6 Exposure compensation 132
Optimal exposure tuning [3] ... 315
7 Focal length 382
8 Lens data 220
9 Focus mode 74
Lens VR
(vibration reduction) [4] 378
10 Flash mode 197
Flash compensation
Commander mode [5]
11 Camera name
12 Folder number–frame
number [6] 293

1 Displayed only if [Data] is selected for [Display mode] (pg. 282).
2 Displayed in red if photo was taken with ISO sensitivity auto control on.
3 Displayed if Custom Setting b6 ([Fine tune optimal Exposure]) has been set to a value other than zero for any metering method.
4 Displayed only if VR lens is attached.
5 Displayed only if optional flash unit SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 is used.
6 Displayed in yellow with image area icon if [DX format (24 × 16)] (DX) or [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] (5:4) was selected for the [Image area] option (pg. 60) in the shooting menu.

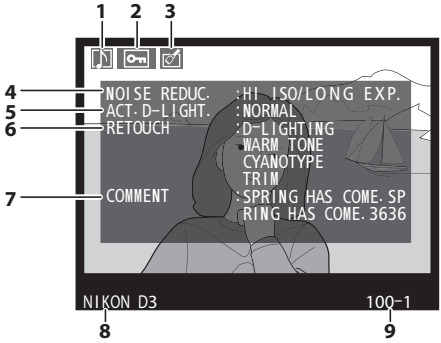
▮▮ *Shooting Data Page 2* [1]



1 Voice memo icon 248
2 Protect status 244
3 Retouch indicator 360
4 White balance 144
Color temperature 151
White balance fine-tuning ... 147
Preset manual 152
5 Color space 187
6 Picture Control 166
7 Quick adjust [2] 171
Original Picture Control [3] 177
8 Sharpening 171
9 Contrast 171
10 Brightness 171
11 Saturation [4] 171
Filter effects [5] 171
12 Hue [4] 171
Toning [5] 171
13 Camera name
14 Folder number–frame number [6] 293

1 Displayed only if [Data] is selected for [Display mode] (pg. 282).
2 [Standard] and [Vivid] Picture Controls only.
3 [Neutral], [Monochrome], and custom Picture Controls.
4 Not displayed with monochrome Picture Controls.
5 Monochrome Picture Controls only.
6 Displayed in yellow with image area icon if [DX format (24 × 16)] (DX) or [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] (5:4) was selected for the [Image area] option (pg. 60) in the shooting menu.

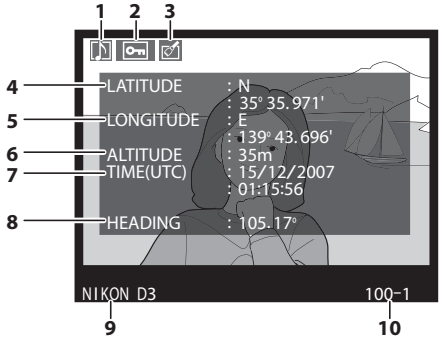
■■ *Shooting Data Page 3* [1]



1 Voice memo icon 248
2 Protect status 244
3 Retouch indicator 360
4 High ISO noise reduction 299
Long exposure noise reduction 299
5 Active D-Lighting 185
6 Retouch history 360
7 Image comment 348
8 Camera name
9 Folder number–frame number [2] 293

1 Displayed only if [Data] is selected for [Display mode] (pg. 282).
2 Displayed in yellow with image area icon if [DX format (24 × 16)] (DX) or [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] (5:4) was selected for the [Image area] option (pg. 60) in the shooting menu.

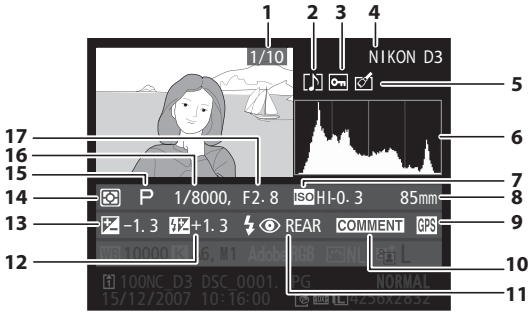
■■ *GPS Data* [1]



1 Voice memo icon 248
2 Protect status 244
3 Retouch indicator 360
4 Latitude
5 Longitude
6 Altitude
7 Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)
8 Heading [2]
9 Camera name
10 Folder number-frame number [3] 293

1 Displayed only if GPS device was used when photo was taken (pg. 223).
2 Displayed only if GPS device is equipped with electronic compass.
3 Displayed in yellow with image area icon if [DX format (24 × 16)] ([DX]) or [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] ([5:4]) was selected for the [Image area] option (pg. 60) in the shooting menu.

Overview Data



1 Folder number/frame number

2 Voice memo icon 248

3 Protect status 244

4 Camera name

5 Retouch indicator 360

6 Histogram showing the distribution of tones in the image (pg. 234). Horizontal axis corresponds to pixel brightness, vertical axis shows number of pixels of each brightness in image.

7 ISO sensitivity [1] 108

8 Focal length 382

9 GPS data indicator 223

10 Image comment indicator 348

11 Flash mode 197

12 Flash compensation

13 Exposure compensation 132

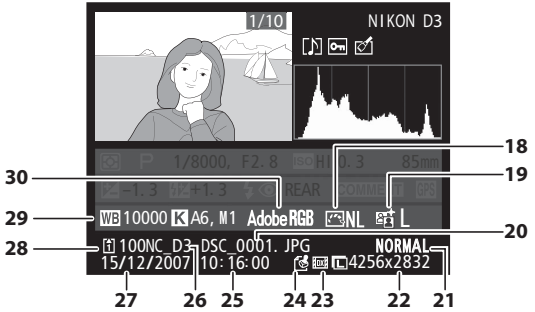
14 Metering method 114

15 Exposure mode 116

16 Shutter speed 120, 124

17 Aperture 122, 124

1 Displayed in red if photo was taken with ISO sensitivity auto control on.

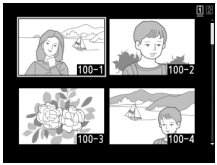


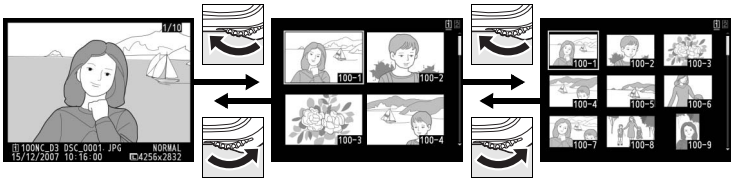
18 Picture Control 166
19 Active D-Lighting 185
20 File name 296
21 Image quality 65
22 Image size 69
23 Image area [2] 60
24 Image authentication indicator 354
25 Time of recording 39
26 Folder name 293
27 Date of recording 39
28 Slot number 42
29 White balance 144
Color temperature 151
White balance fine-tuning 147
Preset manual 152
30 Color space 187

2 DX is displayed if [DX format (24 × 16)] was selected for the [Image area] option (pg. 60) in the shooting menu, 5:4 if [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] was selected. No icon is displayed when [FX format (36 × 24)] is selected.

Viewing Multiple Images: Thumbnail Playback

To display images in “contact sheets” of four or nine images, press the ⊠🔍 button and rotate the main command dial.

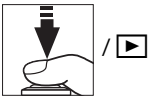




Full-frame playback

Thumbnail playback

The following operations can be performed while thumbnails are displayed:

To	Use	Description
Change number of images displayed		Press ⊠Q button and rotate main command to left to display one, four, or nine images per page.
Toggle full frame playback		Press center of multi selector to switch back and forth between full frame and thumbnail playback.
Highlight images		Use multi selector to highlight images for full-frame playback, playback zoom (pg. 243), or deletion (pg. 245).
Page through images		Press ⊠Q button and rotate sub-command dial to scroll through images a page at a time.
Delete highlighted photo	🗑	See page 245 for more information.
Record/play voice memo	🎙	See page 248 for more information.
Change protect status of highlighted photo	🔑	See page 244 for more information.
View images on other memory card		If two memory cards are inserted, choose memory card from which pictures are played back (pg. 230).
Return to shooting mode		Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	MENU	See page 277 for more information.

See Also

For information on choosing the role played by the center of the multi selector, see Custom Setting f1 [Multi selector center button] (pg. 330).

Taking a Closer Look: Playback Zoom

Press the ⊡Q button and rotate the main command dial right to zoom in on the image displayed in full-frame playback or on the image currently highlighted in thumbnail playback.

The following operations can be performed while zoom is in effect:

To	Use	Description
Zoom in or out	⊡Q +	Press ⊡Q button to display frame showing area currently zoomed in. While ⊡Q button is pressed, main command dial can be used to control size of frame—rotate dial left to zoom out, right to zoom 36 × 24 (3 : 2) format images in up to 27 × (large images), 20 × (medium images) or 13 × (small images). Release ⊡Q button to magnify selected area to fill monitor.
View other areas of image	⊡Q +	Use multi selector to view area not visible in monitor. Keep multi selector pressed to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame.
View other images		Rotate main command dial to view same location in other images at current zoom ratio.
Change protect status		See page 244 for more information.
Return to shooting mode	/ ▶	Monitor will turn off. Photographs can be taken immediately.
Display menus	MENU	See page 277 for more information.

Protecting Photographs from Deletion

In full-frame, zoom, and thumbnail playback, the O-n button can be used to protect photographs from accidental deletion. Protected files can not be deleted using the 🗑 button or the [Delete] option in the playback menu. Note that protected images *will* be deleted when the memory card is formatted (pp. 45, 345).

To protect a photograph:

1 Select an image.

Display the image in full-frame playback or playback zoom or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2 Press the O-n button.

The photograph will be marked with a O-n icon. To remove protection from the photograph so that it can be deleted, display the photograph or highlight it in the thumbnail list and then press the O-n button.

Voice Memos

Changes to the protect status of images also apply to any voice memos that may have been recorded with the images. Voice memo overwrite status can not be set separately.

Removing Protection from All Images

To remove protection from all images in the folder or folders currently selected in the [Playback folder] menu, press the O-n and 🗑 buttons together for about two seconds.

Deleting Individual Photographs

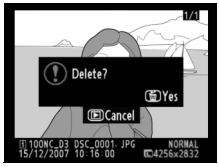
To delete the photograph displayed in full-frame playback or the photograph highlighted in the thumbnail list, press the 🗑 button. Once deleted, photographs can not be recovered.

1 Select an image.

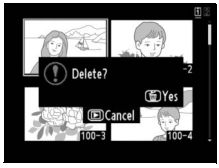
Display the image or highlight it in the thumbnail list.

2 Press the 🗑 button.

A confirmation dialog will be displayed.



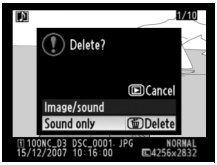
Full-frame playback



Thumbnail playback

To delete the photograph, press the 🗑 button again. To exit without deleting the photograph, press the ▶ button.

Voice Memos



If a voice memo has been recorded with the selected image, the confirmation dialog shown at right will be displayed when the 🗑 button is pressed.

- **[Image/sound]**: Select this option and press the 🗑 button to delete both photo and voice memo.
- **[Sound only]**: Select this option and press the 🗑 button to delete only the voice memo.

To exit without deleting either voice memo or photo, press ◀ or ▶.

See Also

To delete multiple images, use the [Delete] option in the playback menu (pg. 281). The [After delete] option in the playback menu determines whether the next image or the previous image is displayed after an image is deleted (pg. 287).

Voice Memos

– Recording and Playback

The camera is equipped with a built-in microphone, allowing voice memos to be added to photographs. Voice memos can be played back over the camera's built-in speaker.

Recording Voice Memos ..... pg. 248

Playing Voice Memos..... pg. 253

Recording Voice Memos

Voice memos up to sixty seconds long can be added to photographs using the built-in microphone.

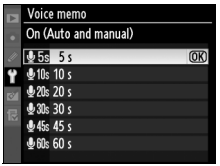
Readying the Camera for Recording

Before recording voice memos, choose the desired options for the [Voice memo] (pg. 248), [Voice memo overwrite] (pg. 249), and [Voice memo button] (pg. 249) options in the setup menu.

▮▮ *Voice Memo*

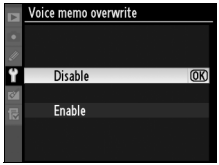
This option controls whether voice memos are recorded automatically or manually. The following options are available:

	Option	Description
	Off (default)	Voice memos can not be recorded in shooting mode.
5s	**On (Auto and manual)**	Selecting this option displays menu shown at right; select maximum recording time from 5 (default), 10, 20, 30, 45, or 60 s. Unless [On] is selected for [Image review] in playback menu (pg. 287), recording will begin when shutter-release button is released after shooting. Recording ends when button is pressed or after specified recording time has ended.
	Manual only	Memo can be recorded for most recent photograph by pressing and holding button (pg. 250).



■■ *Voice Memo Overwrite*

This option controls whether the voice memo for the most recent photograph can be overwritten in shooting mode. The following options are available:



Option	Description
Disable (default)	Voice memo can not be recorded in shooting mode if one already exists for most recent image.
Enable	Voice memo can be recorded in shooting mode even if one already exists for most recent image (pg. 250). Existing memo will be deleted and replaced by new memo.

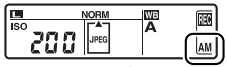
■■ *Voice Memo Button*

This option controls manual recording. The following options are available:

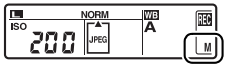
Option		Description
	Press and hold (default)	Voice memo is recorded while button is held down. Recording will end automatically after 60 s.
	Press to start/ stop	Recording begins when button is pressed and ends when button is pressed again. Recording will end automatically after 60 s.

Voice Memo

The option selected for [Voice memo] is indicated by an icon in the rear control panel.



On (auto and manual)



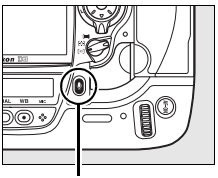
Manual only

Automatic Recording (Shooting Mode)

If [On (Auto and manual)] is selected for [Voice memo] (pg. 248), a voice memo will be added to the most recent photograph when shooting ends. Recording will end when the 🎙 button is pressed or after the specified recording time has ended.

Manual Recording (Shooting Mode)

If [On (Auto and manual)] or [Manual only] is selected for [Voice memo] (pg. 248), a voice memo can be recorded for the most recent photograph by pressing and holding the 🎙 button. A voice memo will be recorded while the button is held down (note that no voice memo will be recorded if the 🎙 button is not held down for at least one second).



🎙 button

☑ Automatic Recording

Voice memos will not be recorded automatically if [On] is selected for the [Image review] option (pg. 287) in the playback menu.

☑ Slot 2

If two memory cards are inserted and [Backup] or [RAW Slot 1-JPEG Slot 2] is selected for the [Slot 2] option (pg. 71) in the shooting menu, voice memos will be associated with the images recorded to the memory card in slot 1.

Playback Mode

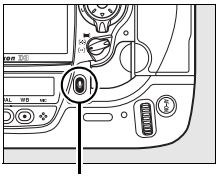
To add a voice memo to the photograph currently displayed in full-frame playback or highlighted in the thumbnail list (pg. 228):

1 Choose a photograph.

Display or highlight the photograph. Only one voice memo can be recorded per image; additional voice memos can not be recorded for images already marked with a [♪] icon.

2 Press and hold the 🎙 button.

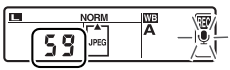
A voice memo will be recorded while the 🎙 button is held down (note that no voice memo will be recorded if the 🎙 button is not held down for at least one second).



🎙 button

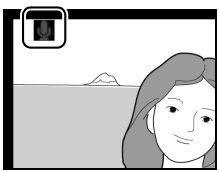
During Recording

During recording, the 🎙 icons in the rear control panel will blink. A countdown timer in the rear control panel shows the length of the voice memo that can be recorded (in seconds).



Rear control panel

In playback mode, a 🎙 icon is displayed in the monitor during recording.



Interrupting Recording

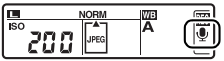
Recording will end automatically if:

- The MENU button is pressed to display the menus
- The ▶ button is pressed
- The shutter-release button is pressed halfway
- The camera is turned off

During interval timer photography, recording will end automatically about two seconds before the next photograph is taken.

After Recording

If a voice memo has been recorded for the most recent photograph, a 🎙 icon will be displayed in the rear control panel.



Rear control panel

If a voice memo exists for the photograph currently selected in playback mode, a ♪ icon will be displayed in the monitor.

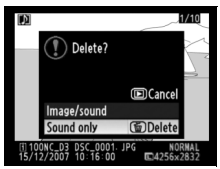
Voice Memo File Names

Voice memos are stored as WAV files with names of the form "*xxxxnnnn*.WAV," where "*xxxxnnnn*" is a file name copied from the image with which the voice memo is associated. For example, the voice memo for the image "DSC_0002.JPG" would have the file name "DSC_0002.WAV." Voice memo file names can be viewed on a computer.

Playing Voice Memos

Voice memos can be played back over the camera's built-in speaker when the associated image is viewed in full-frame playback or highlighted in the thumbnail list (pp. 228, 242). The presence of a voice memo is indicated by an [♪] icon.

To	Press	Description
Start/end playback	🎙	Press 🎙 to start playback. Playback will end when 🎙 button is pressed again or entire memo has been played back.
Delete voice memo	🗑	Confirmation dialog will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight option, press 🗑 to select. • **[Image/sound]**: Delete both photo and voice memo. • **[Sound only]**: Delete voice memo only. To exit without deleting image or voice memo, press the ▶ button.



Interrupting Playback

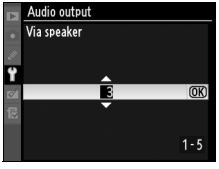
Playback will end automatically if:

- The MENU button is pressed to display the menus
- The monitor is turned off by pressing the ▶ button or by pressing the shutter-release button halfway
- The camera is turned off
- Another image is selected

Voice Memo Playback Options

The [Audio output] option in the setup menu controls whether voice memos are played back over the camera's built-in speaker or by a device to which the camera is connected via an HDMI or audio/video cable. When sound is played back over the built-in speaker, the [Audio output] option also controls playback volume.

Option		Description
🔊	**Via speaker** (default)	Voice memos are played back over built-in speaker. Selecting this option displays menu shown at right. Press ▲ or ▼ to change volume. Beep will sound when option is selected. Press ⊛ to make selection and return to setup menu.
A/V-OUT	**HDMI/audio-video output**	Audio signal output to HDMI or A/V-OUT terminal.
🔇	**Off**	Voice memos are not played back. 🔇 icon is displayed when photo for which voice memo exists is viewed in monitor.



Connections

– Connecting to External Devices

This chapter describes how to copy photographs to a computer, how to print pictures, and how to view them on a television set.

Connecting to a Computer ..... pg. 256

Direct USB Connection ..... pg. 258

Wireless and Ethernet Networks ..... pg. 261

Printing Photographs ..... pg. 262

Direct USB Connection ..... pg. 263

Viewing Photographs on TV ..... pg. 274

Standard Definition Devices ..... pg. 274

High-Definition Devices ..... pg. 276

Connecting to a Computer

This section describes how to connect the camera to a computer using the supplied UC-E4 USB cable. Once the camera is connected, Nikon Transfer (supplied) or optional Nikon software such as Camera Control Pro 2 can be used to copy photographs to the computer or control the camera remotely.

Connecting Cables

Be sure the camera is off when connecting or disconnecting interface cables. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.

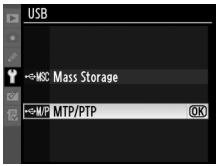
Camera Control Pro 2

Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately; pg. 387) can be used to control the camera from a computer. Before connecting the camera, set the camera [USB] option (pg. 257) to [MTP/PTP]. When Camera Control Pro 2 is running, "PC" will be displayed in the top control panel.

■■ *Before Connecting the Camera*

Install the necessary software from the supplied installer CD (see the *Install Guide* for more information). To ensure that data transfer is not interrupted, be sure the camera battery is fully charged. If in doubt, charge the battery before use or use an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately).

Before connecting the camera, select the [USB] option in the camera setup menu (pg. 350) and choose a USB option from [MTP/PTP] (default) and [Mass Storage] as described below.



Operating system *	Nikon Transfer	Camera Control Pro 2
• **Windows Vista** (32-bit Home Basic/ Home Premium/Business/ Enterprise/Ultimate editions) • **Windows XP** (Home Edition/ Professional)	Choose [MTP/PTP] or [Mass Storage]	Choose [MTP/PTP]
Mac OS X (version 10.3.9 or 10.4.10)		
Windows 2000 Professional	Choose [Mass Storage]	

* See the websites listed on page xxiv for the latest information on supported operating systems.

☑ Windows 2000 Professional

Do NOT select [MTP/PTP] when using Nikon Transfer. If [MTP/PTP] is selected when the camera is connected, the Windows hardware wizard will be displayed. Click [Cancel] to exit the wizard, and then disconnect the camera. Be sure to select [Mass Storage] before reconnecting the camera.

Direct USB Connection

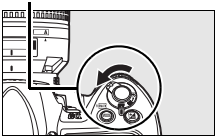
Connect the camera using the supplied UC-E4 USB cable.

1 Select a USB option.

Before connecting the camera to the computer, make sure the correct option is selected for the [USB] item in the camera setup menu (pg. 257).

2 Turn the camera off.

Power switch

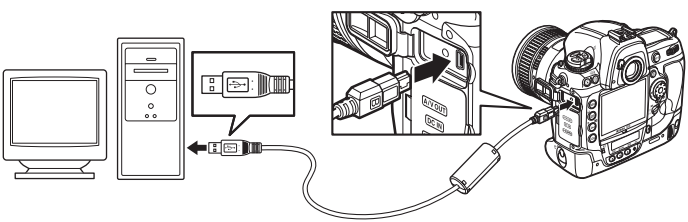


3 Turn the computer on.

Turn the computer on and wait for it to start up.

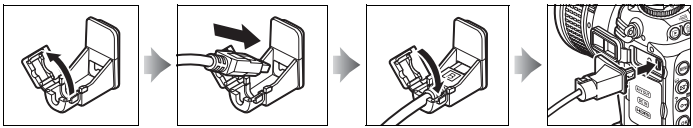
4 Connect the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable as shown. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.



The USB Cable Clip

To prevent cable from being disconnected, fasten the clip as shown.



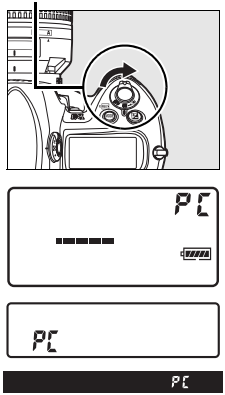
USB Hubs

Connect the camera directly to the computer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub or keyboard.

5 Turn the camera on.

If [Mass Storage] is selected for [USB] (pg. 257), PC will be displayed in the control panels and viewfinder, and the PC connection indicator will flash in the top control panel (camera displays do not change if [MTP/PTP] is selected).

Power switch



6 Transfer photographs.

Transfer photographs to the computer as described in the online help for Nikon Transfer. To view the online help, start Nikon Transfer and select [Nikon Transfer help] from the Nikon Transfer [Help] menu.

During Transfer

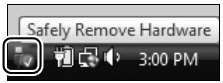
Do not turn the camera off or disconnect the USB cable while transfer is in progress.

7 Turn the camera off.

If [MTP/PTP] is selected for [USB], the camera can be turned off and the USB cable disconnected once transfer is complete. If [Mass Storage] is selected, the camera must first be removed from the system as described below.

Windows Vista

Click the "Safely Remove Hardware" icon ( ) in the taskbar and select [Safely Remove USB Mass Storage Device] from the menu that appears.

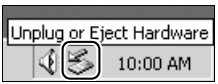


Windows XP Home Edition / Windows XP Professional

Click the "Safely Remove Hardware" icon ( ) in the taskbar and select [Safely remove USB Mass Storage Device] from the menu that appears.

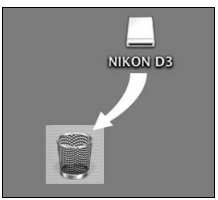
Windows 2000 Professional

Click the "Unplug or Eject Hardware" icon ( ) in the taskbar and select [Stop USB Mass Storage Device] from the menu that appears.



Mac OS X

Drag the camera volume ("NIKON D3") into the Trash.



Wireless and Ethernet Networks

If the optional WT-4 wireless transmitter is attached, photographs can be transferred or printed over wireless or Ethernet networks and the camera can also be controlled from network computers running Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately). The WT-4 can be used in any of the following modes:

Mode	Function
Transfer mode	Upload new or existing photographs to computer or ftp server.
Thumbnail select mode	Preview photographs on computer monitor before upload.
PC mode	Control camera from computer using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately).
Print mode	Print JPEG photographs on printer connected to network computer.

For more information, see the WT-4 user's manual.

☑ USB

Select [MTP/PTP] for the camera [USB] option(pg. 257) before connecting a WT-4 wireless transmitter.

☑ WT-4A/B/C/D/E

The principal difference between the WT-4 and WT-4A/B/C/D/E is in the number of channels supported; unless otherwise stated, all references to the WT-4 also apply to the WT-4A/B/C/D/E.

Printing Photographs

Photographs can be printed by any of the following methods:

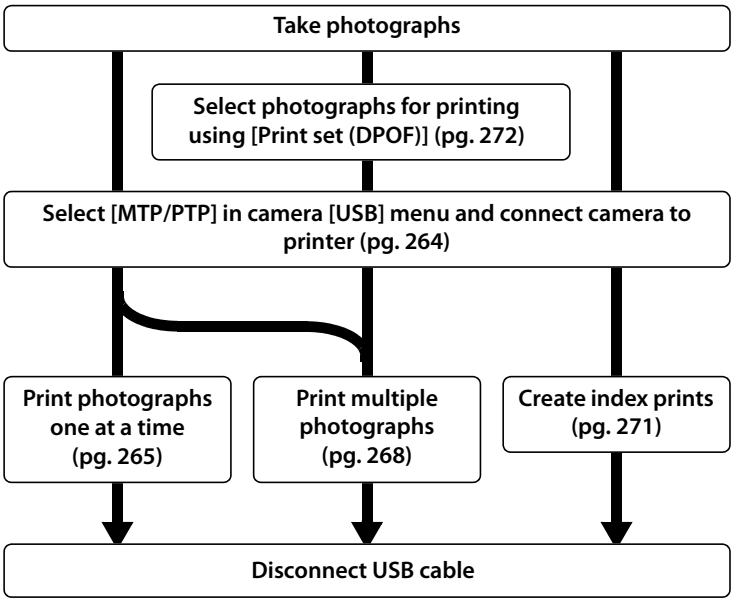
- Connect the camera to a printer and print JPEG photographs directly from the camera (pg. 263).
- Insert the camera memory card in a printer equipped with a card slot (see the printer manual for details). If the printer supports DPOF (pg. 436), photographs can be selected for printing using [Print set (DPOF)] (pg. 272).
- Take the camera memory card to a developer or digital printer center. If the center supports DPOF (pg. 436), photographs can be selected for printing using [Print set (DPOF)] (pg. 272).
- Print JPEG photographs on a printer connected to a network computer using the WT-4 wireless transmitter (available separately; see the WT-4 user's manual for details).
- Transfer pictures (pg. 256) and print them from a computer using ViewNX (supplied) or Capture NX (available separately; pg. 387). Note that this is the only method available for printing RAW (NEF) pictures.

TIFF Photographs

TIFF photographs can be printed from a computer. Some digital print services may also support TIFF; check with the service before ordering.

Direct USB Connection

If the camera is connected to a PictBridge printer via the supplied USB cable, selected JPEG pictures can be printed directly from the camera.



USB Hubs

Connect the camera directly to the computer; do not connect the cable via a USB hub or keyboard.

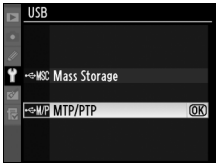
Printing Via Direct USB Connection

Be sure the battery is fully charged or use an optional EH-6 AC adapter. When taking photographs to be printed via direct USB connection, set [Color space] to [sRGB] (pg. 187).

■■ *Connecting the Printer*

Connect the camera using the supplied UC-E4 USB cable.

1 Select [MTP/PTP].

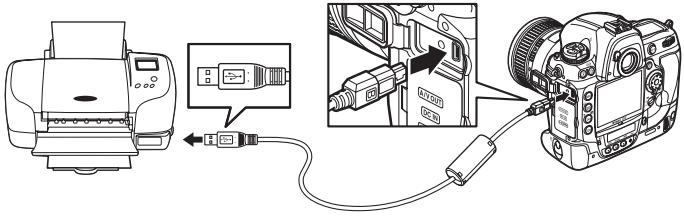


If the [USB] option in the camera setup menu has been changed from the default setting of [MTP/PTP], display the [USB] menu and select [MTP/PTP] (pg. 257).

2 Turn the camera off.

3 Connect the USB cable.

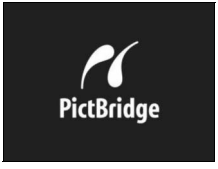
Turn the printer on and connect the USB cable as shown. Do not use force or attempt to insert the connectors at an angle.



4 Turn the camera on.

A welcome screen will be displayed in the monitor, followed by a PictBridge playback display.

①



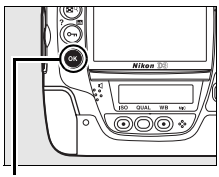
②

1 Select a picture.

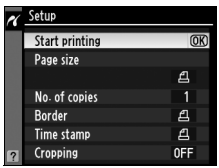
Press ◀ or ▶ to view additional pictures, or press the ⊡Q button and rotate the main command dial right to zoom in on the current frame (pg. 243). Press ▶ to return to full-frame playback. To view six pictures at a time, press the center of the multi selector. Use the multi selector to highlight pictures, or press the center of the multi selector again to display the highlighted picture full frame.

2 Display printing options.

Press ⊛ to display PictBridge printing options.

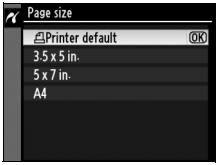
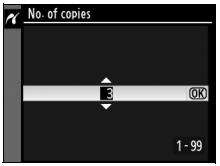
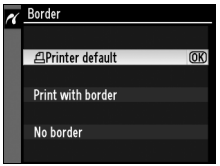
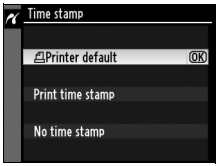


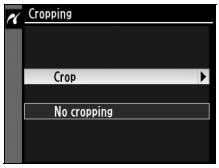
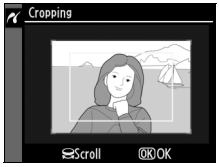
⊛ **button**



3 Adjust printing options.

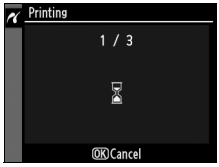
Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option and press ▶ to select.

Option	Description	
Page size	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose page size (to print at default page size for current printer, select [Printer default]), then press ⓞ to select and return to previous menu.	
No. of copies	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose number of copies (maximum 99), then press ⓞ to select and return to previous menu.	
Border	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose print style from [Printer default] (default for current printer), [Print with border] (print photo with white border), or [No border], then press ⓞ to select and return to previous menu.	
Time stamp	Menu shown at right will be displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to choose [Printer default] (default for current printer), [Print time stamp] (print time and date of recording on photo), or [No time stamp], then press ⓞ to select and return to previous menu.	

Option	Description
Cropping	Menu shown at right will be displayed. To exit without cropping picture, highlight [No cropping] and press ⊛. To crop picture, highlight [Crop] and press ▶.  If [Crop] is selected, dialog shown at right will be displayed. Rotate main command dial to right to increase size of crop, left to decrease. Choose position of crop using multi selector and press ⊛. 

4 Start printing.

Select [Start printing] and press ⊛ to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press ⊛.



Selecting Photographs for Printing

Images created at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) or TIFF (RGB) (pg. 65) can not be selected for printing.

See Also

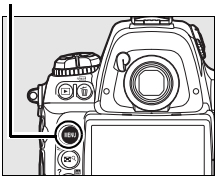
See page 415 for information on what to do if an error occurs during printing.

Printing Multiple Pictures

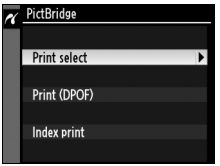
1 Display the PictBridge menu.

Press the **MENU** button in the PictBridge playback display (see Step 4 on page 264).

MENU button



2 Choose [Print select] or [Print (DPOF)].

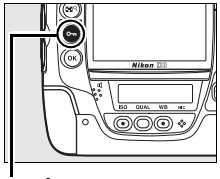


Highlight one of the following options and press ▶.

- **[Print select]**: Select pictures for printing.
- **[Print (DPOF)]**: Print an existing print order created with the [Print set (DPOF)] option in the playback menu (pg. 272). The current print order will be displayed in Step 3.

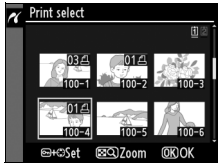
To create an index print of all JPEG pictures on the memory card, select [Index print]. See page 271 for more information.

3 Select pictures.



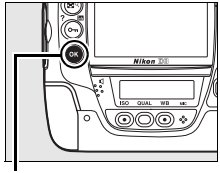
button

Use the multi selector to scroll through the pictures on the memory card. To display the current picture full screen, press ⊠ button. To select the current picture for printing, press the button and press ▲. The picture will be marked with a icon and the number of prints will be set to 1. Keeping the button pressed, press ▲ or ▼ to specify the number of prints (up to 99; to deselect the picture, press ▼ when the number of prints is 1). Continue until all the desired pictures have been selected.

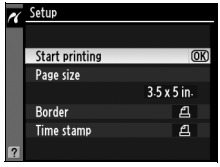


4 Display printing options.

Press ⊛ to display PictBridge printing options.

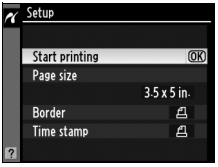


⊛ button



5 Adjust printing options.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option and press ▶ to select.



Option	Description
Page size	Menu of page size options will be displayed (pg. 266). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose page size (to print at default page size for current printer, select [Printer default]), then press ⊛ to select and return to previous menu.
Border	Menu of border options will be displayed (pg. 266). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose print style from [Printer default] (default for current printer), [Print with border] (print photo with white border), or [No border], then press ⊛ to select and return to previous menu.
Time stamp	Menu of time stamp options will be displayed (pg. 266). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose [Printer default] (default for current printer), [Print time stamp] (print time and date of recording on photo), or [No time stamp], then press ⊛ to select and return to previous menu.

6 Start printing.

Select [Start printing] and press ⊛ to start printing. To cancel before all copies have been printed, press ⊛.

Page Size, Border, Time Stamp, and Cropping

Choose printer default to print at current printer settings. Only options supported by the current printer can be selected. Note that print quality may drop if small crops are printed at large sizes.

See Also

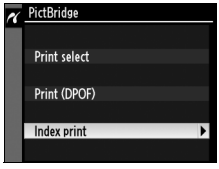
See page 415 for information on what to do if an error occurs during printing.

■■ *Creating Index Prints*

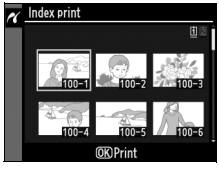
To create an index print of all JPEG pictures on the memory card, select [Index print] in Step 2 of "Printing Multiple Pictures" (pg. 268). Note that if the memory card contains more than 256 pictures, only the first 256 images will be printed.

1 Select [Index print].

Highlight [Index print] in the PictBridge menu (pg. 268) and press ▶.



The confirmation dialog shown at right will be displayed.

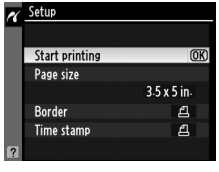


2 Display printing options.

Press ⊛ to display PictBridge printing options.

3 Adjust printing options.

Choose page size, border, and time stamp options as described on page 270 (a warning will be displayed if the selected page size is too small).



4 Start printing.

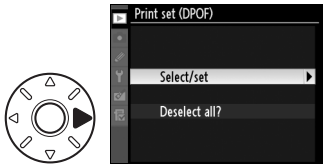
Highlight [Start printing] and press ⊛ to start printing. To cancel before printing is complete, press ⊛.

■■ *Creating a DPOF Print Order: Print Set*

The [Print set (DPOF)] option in the playback menu is used to create digital "print orders" for PictBridge-compatible printers and devices that support DPOF. Selecting [Print set (DPOF)] from the playback menu displays the menu shown in Step 1.

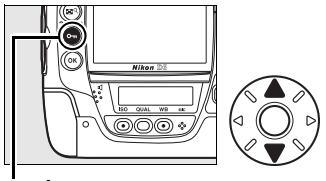
1 Choose [Select/set].

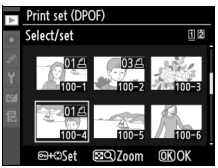
Highlight [Select/set] and press ▶.



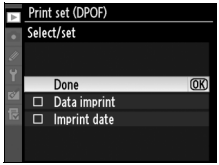
2 Select pictures.

Use the multi selector to scroll through the pictures on the memory card. To display the current picture in full screen, press ⊠🔍 button. To select the current picture for printing, press the 🔑 button and press ▲. The picture will be marked with a 🖨 icon and the number of prints will be set to 1. Keeping the 🔑 button pressed, press ▲ or ▼ to specify the number of prints (up to 99; to deselect the picture, press ▼ when the number of prints is 1). Press Ⓚ when all the desired pictures have been selected.





3 Select imprint options.

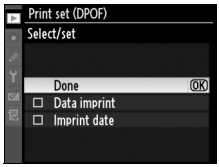


Highlight the following options and press ▶ to toggle the highlighted option on or off (to complete the print order without including this information, proceed to Step 4).

- **[Data imprint]**: Print shutter speed and aperture on all pictures in print order.
- **[Imprint date]**: Print date of recording on all pictures in print order.

4 Complete the print order.

Highlight [Done] and press ⊛ to complete the print order.



☑ Print Set

To print the current print order when the camera is connected to a PictBridge printer, select [Print (DPOF)] in the PictBridge menu and follow the steps in "Printing Multiple Pictures" to modify and print the current order (pg. 268). DPOF date and data imprint options are not supported when printing via direct USB connection; to print the date of recording on photographs in the current print order, use the PictBridge [Time stamp] option.

The Print Set option can not be used if there is not enough space on the memory card to store the print order.

Images created at image quality settings of NEF (RAW; pg. 65) can not be selected for printing using this option.

Print orders may not print correctly if images are deleted using a computer or other device after the print order is created.

Viewing Photographs on TV

The supplied EG-D2 audio/video (A/V) cable can be used to connect the D3 to a television or VCR for playback or recording. A type A **H**igh-**D**efinition **M**ultimedia **I**nterface (HDMI) cable (available separately from commercial sources) can be used to connect the camera to high-definition video devices.

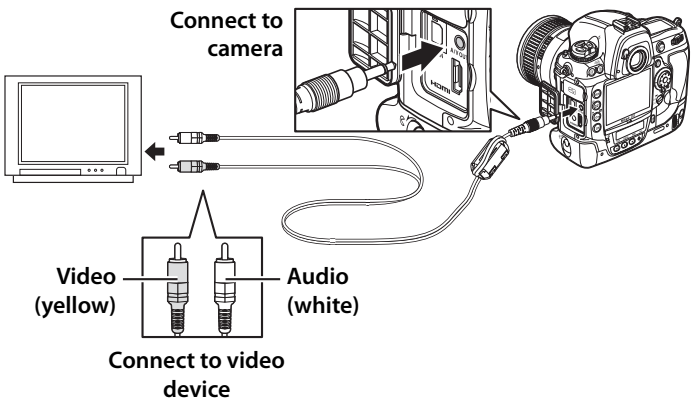
Standard Definition Devices

To connect the camera to a standard television:

1 Turn the camera off.

Always turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting the A/V cable.

2 Connect the supplied A/V cable as shown.



3 Tune the television to the video channel.

4 Turn the camera on and press ▶ button.

During playback, images will be displayed both on the television screen or recorded to video tape and the camera monitor.

Video Mode (pg. 346)

Be sure that the video standard matches the standard used in the video device. Note that resolution will drop when images are output on a PAL device.

Television Playback

Use of an EH-6 AC adapter (available separately) is recommended for extended playback. When the EH-6 is connected, the camera monitor-off delay will be fixed at ten minutes and the exposure meters will no longer turn off automatically. Note that the edges may not be visible when photographs are viewed on a television screen.

Audio Output (pg. 254)

Set [HDMI/audio-video output] to play back or record voice memos on the video device.

Slide Shows

The [Slide show] option in the playback menu can be used for automated playback (pg. 288).

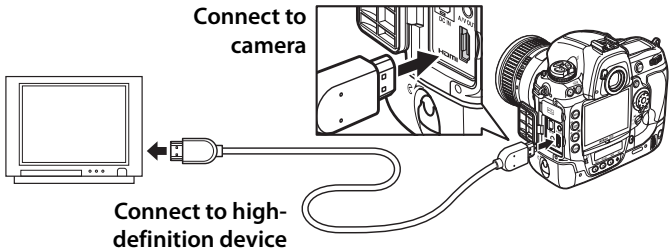
High-Definition Devices

The camera can be connected to HDMI devices using a type A HDMI cable (available separately from commercial sources).

1 Turn the camera off.

Always turn the camera off before connecting or disconnecting an HDMI cable.

2 Connect the HDMI cable as shown.



3 Tune the device to the HDMI channel.

4 Turn the camera on and press ▶ button.

During playback, images will be displayed on the high-definition television or monitor screen; the camera monitor will remain off.

HDMI (pg. 346)

At the default setting of [Auto], the camera automatically selects the appropriate HDMI format for the high-definition device. The HDMI format can be chosen using the [HDMI] option in the setup menu (pg. 346).

Menu Guide

This chapter describes the options available in the camera menus.

The Playback Menu: Managing Images ..... pg. 278

The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options..... pg. 290

Custom Settings: Fine-Tuning Camera Settings..... pg. 301

The Setup Menu: Camera Setup..... pg. 344

The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies..... pg. 360

My Menu: Creating a Custom Menu ..... pg. 373

▶ The Playback Menu: Managing Images

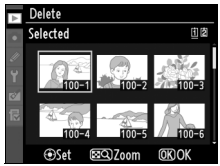
The playback menu contains the options listed below. For information on using the playback menu, see "Tutorial: Camera Menus" (pg. 26).

Option	See page
Delete	281
Playback folder	281
Hide image	281
Display mode	282
Copy image(s)	283
Image review	287
After delete	287
Rotate tall	287
Slide show	288
Print set (DPOF)	289

Selecting Multiple Pictures

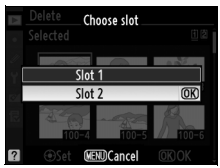
To select multiple pictures for [Delete] (pg. 281), [Hide image] (pg. 281), [Print set (DPOF)] (pg. 289), and direct printing (pg. 268):

1 Highlight a picture.

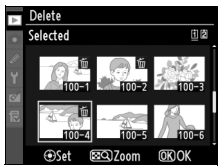


To view the highlighted picture full screen, press and hold the ⊡Q button.

If two memory cards are inserted, the slot can be selected by holding the ⊡Q button and pressing ▲. The menu shown at right will be displayed (pg. 230); highlight the desired slot and press ⊛.



2 Press the center of the multi selector to select the highlighted picture.

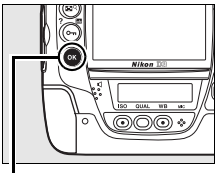


Selected pictures are marked by an icon. When selecting pictures for printing, press the O⊓ button and press ▲ or ▼ to choose the number of copies.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select additional pictures.

To deselect a picture, highlight it and press center of multi selector.

4 Press ⓞⓚ to complete the operation.



ⓞⓚ button

A confirmation dialog will be displayed; highlight [Yes] and press ⓞⓚ.

Delete

Select this option to delete pictures and their associated voice memos. Protected and hidden images will not be deleted.

Option	Description
Selected	Delete selected pictures.
All	Delete all pictures in the folder currently selected for playback (pg. 281). If two memory cards are inserted, a slot selection dialog will be displayed before deletion.

Playback Folder

Choose a folder for playback.

Option	Description
NC_D3 (default)	Pictures in all folders created with the D3 will be visible during playback.
All	Pictures in all folders will be visible during playback.
Current	Only pictures in the current folder will be visible during playback.

Hide Image

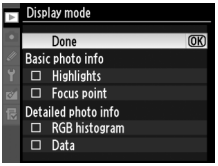
Hide or reveal selected pictures. Hidden pictures are visible only in the [Hide image] menu and can only be deleted by formatting the memory card.

Option	Description
Select/set	Hide or reveal selected pictures.
Deselect all?	Reveal all pictures.

Protected and Hidden Images

Revealing a protected image will also remove protection from the image.

Display Mode



Choose the information available in the playback photo information display (pg. 231). Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an option, then press ▶ to select the option for the photo information display. A ✔ appears next to selected items; to deselect, highlight and press ▶. To return to the playback menu, highlight [Done] and press ⊛.

Option	Description
Basic photo info	
Highlights	Highlights are shown by blinking border in photo information display.
Focus point	Active focus point (or, in single-servo AF, focus point where focus first locked) is shown in red in photo information display. No focus point is displayed if camera was unable to focus using continuous-servo autofocus or if continuous-servo autofocus was used with auto-area AF.
Detailed photo info	
RGB histogram	Red, green, and blue histograms are displayed in photo information display.
Data	Shooting data pages (including camera name, metering, exposure, focal length, white balance, and image options) appear in photo information display.

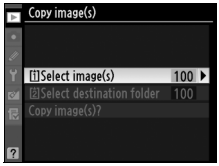
Copy Image(s)

Copy photographs from the memory card in slot 1 to the memory card in slot 2.

Option	Description
Select image(s)	Select photographs from memory card in slot 1.
Select destination folder	Select destination folder on memory card in slot 2.
Copy images?	Copy selected photographs to specified destination.

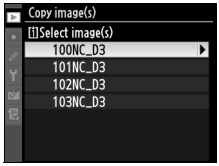
1 Choose [Select image(s)].

Highlight [Select image(s)] and press ▶.



2 Choose the source folder.

Highlight the folder containing the images to be copied and press ▶.

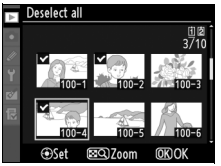


3 Preselect all or protected images.

Highlight one of the following options and press ▶:

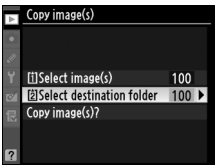
- **[Deselect all]**: No images will be preselected. Choose this option when selecting individual images by hand.
- **[Select all images]**: Preselect all images in the current folder. Choose this option when selecting all or most images in the current folder to be copied.
- **[Select protected images]**: Preselect all protected images in the current folder.

4 Select images.



Images preselected in Step 3 are marked by a ✔ icon. To select additional images or deselect preselected pictures, highlight the image and press the center of the multi selector. Press Ⓚ to return to the [Copy image(s)] menu when selection is complete.

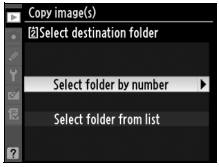
5 Choose [Select destination folder].

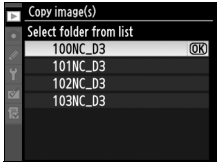


Highlight [Select destination folder] and press ▶.

6 Choose a selection method.

Highlight one of the following options and press ▶.



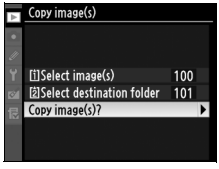
Option	Description
Select folder by number	Enter number of destination folder.
Select folder from list	Select destination folder from list. 

7 Select a destination folder.

Enter the desired folder number or highlight the destination folder and press ⊛ to select the folder and return to the [Copy image(s)] menu.

8 Select [Copy image(s)?].

Highlight [Copy image(s)?] and press ▶.



9 Select [Yes].

A confirmation dialog will be displayed. Highlight [Yes] and press ⊛.

Copy Image(s)?

Images can only be copied if there is sufficient space on the destination memory card. Hidden pictures can not be copied.

If the destination folder contains a file with the same name as a file selected for copying, a warning will be displayed. To replace the existing file, highlight [Replace existing image] or [Replace all] and press ⊛. Hidden or protected files in the destination folder will not be replaced.

Select [Skip] to cancel replacement and proceed to copy remaining files. Select [Cancel] to cancel before copying is complete.

Copies have the same protect marking as the original; print marking is not copied. Voice memos will be copied with their associated images.

Image Review

Choose whether pictures are automatically displayed in the monitor immediately after shooting.

Option	Description
On	Pictures are automatically displayed in the monitor after shooting.
Off (default)	Pictures can only be displayed by pressing ▶ button.

After Delete

Choose the picture displayed after an image is deleted.

Option	Description
Show next (default)	Display following picture. If deleted picture was last frame, previous picture will be displayed.
Show previous	Display previous picture. If deleted picture was first frame, following picture will be displayed.
Continue as before	If user was scrolling through pictures in order recorded, following picture will be displayed as described for [Show next]. If user was scrolling through pictures in reverse order, previous picture will be displayed as described for [Show previous].

Rotate Tall

Choose whether to rotate "tall" (portrait-orientation) pictures for display in the camera monitor.

Option	Description
On	"Tall" (portrait-orientation) pictures are automatically rotated for display in the camera monitor. Pictures taken with [Off] selected for [Auto image rotation] (pg. 349) will be displayed in "wide" (landscape) orientation.
Off (default)	"Tall" (portrait-orientation) pictures are displayed in "wide" (landscape) orientation.

Slide Show

Create a slide show of the pictures in the current playback folder (pg. 281). Hidden images (pg. 281) are not displayed.

Option	Description
Start	Start slide show.
Frame interval	Choose how long each picture will be displayed.
Audio playback	Display menu of voice memo playback options (pg. 289).

To start the slide show, highlight [Start] and press ⊛. The following operations can be performed while the slide show is in progress:

To	Press	Description
Skip back/skip ahead		Press ◀ to return to previous frame, ▶ to skip to next frame.
View additional photo info		Change photo info displayed (pg. 231).
Pause slide show	⊛	Pause slide show (see following page). Voice memo playback may continue after ⊛ button has been pressed.
Exit to playback menu	MENU	End slide show and return to playback menu.
Exit to playback mode	▶	End slide show and exit to full-frame (pg. 228) or thumbnail playback (pg. 241).
Exit to shooting mode		Press shutter-release button halfway to return to shooting mode.

A dialog shown at right is displayed when the show ends or when the ⓚ button is pressed to pause playback. Select [Restart] to restart (if the slide was paused, the show will resume from the next slide) or [Exit] to return to the playback menu.

▮▮ *Audio Playback*

Choose [On] to play voice memos during slide shows. The following options will be displayed:

Option	Description
Frame interval	Playback ends when next frame is displayed, even if entire memo has not been played.
Length of voice memo	Next frame is not displayed until entire memo has been played, even if frame interval is shorter than voice memo.

Choose [Off] (the default option) to disable voice memo playback during slide shows.

Print Set (DPOF)

Choose [Select/set] to select pictures for printing on a DPOF-compatible device (pg. 272). Choose [Deselect all?] to remove all pictures from the current print order.

The Shooting Menu: Shooting Options

The shooting menu contains the options listed below. For information on using the shooting menu, see "Tutorial: Camera Menus" (pg. 26).

Option	See page
Shooting menu bank	291
Reset shooting menu	293
Active folder	293
File naming	296
Slot 2	71
Image quality	65
Image size	69
Image area	60
JPEG compression	67
NEF (RAW) recording	68
White balance	144
Set Picture Control	166
Manage Picture Control	174
Color space	187
Active D-Lighting	185
Long exp. NR	299
High ISO NR	299
ISO sensitivity settings	108
Live view	90
Multiple exposure	208
Interval timer shooting	213

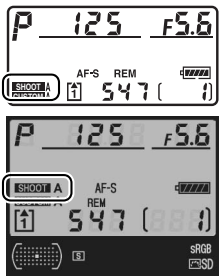
Shooting Menu Bank

Shooting menu options are stored in one of four banks. With the exceptions of [Interval timer shooting] and [Multiple exposure], changes to settings in one bank have no effect on the others. To store a particular combination of frequently-used settings, select one of the four banks and set the camera to these settings. The new settings will be stored in the bank even when the camera is turned off, and will be restored the next time the bank is selected. Different combinations of settings can be stored in the other banks, allowing the user to switch instantly from one combination to another by selecting the appropriate bank from the bank menu.

The default names for the four shooting menu banks are A, B, C, and D. A descriptive caption can be added using the [Rename] option as described below.

Shooting Menu Bank

The top control panel and shooting information displays show the current shooting menu bank.

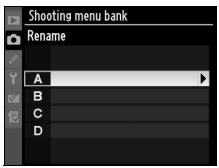


Renaming Shooting Menu Banks

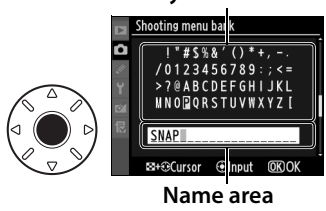
Selecting [Rename] in the [Shooting menu bank] menu displays the list of shooting menu banks shown in Step 1.

1 Select a bank.

Highlight the desired bank and press ▶.



2 Enter a name.

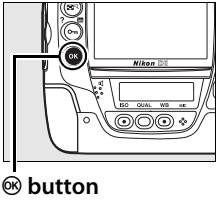


To move the cursor in the name area, press the ⊠Q button and press ◀ or ▶. To enter a new letter at the current cursor position, use the multi selector to highlight the desired character in the keyboard area and press the center of the multi selector. To delete the character at the current cursor position, press the 🗑 button. To return to the shooting menu without changing the bank name, press the MENU button.

Bank names can be up to twenty characters long. Any characters after the twentieth will be deleted.

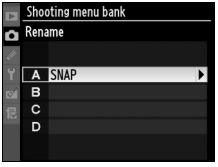
3 Save changes and exit.

After editing the name, press ⊛ to save changes and exit.



⊛ button

The [Shooting menu bank] menu will be displayed.



Reset Shooting Menu

Choose whether to restore default settings for the current shooting menu bank. See page 419 for a list of default settings. With the exceptions of image quality, image size, white balance, and ISO sensitivity, shooting menu settings are not reset when a two-button reset (pg. 206) is performed.

Option	Description
Yes	Restore defaults for the current shooting menu bank.
No (default)	Exit without changing shooting menu settings.

Active Folder

Select the folder in which subsequent images will be stored.

■■ *New Folder Number*

1 Select [New folder number].

Highlight [New folder number] and press ▶.

2 Choose a folder number.

Press the ◀ or ▶ to highlight a digit, press ▲ or ▼ to change. If a folder with the selected number already exists, a 🗀, 🗁, or 🗁 icon will be displayed to the left of the folder number:

- 🗀: Folder is empty.
- 🗁: Folder is partially full.
- 🗁: Folder contains 999 pictures or a picture numbered 9999. No further pictures can be stored in this folder.

3 Save changes and exit.

Press ⊛ to complete the operation and return to the shooting menu (to exit without changing the active folder, press the MENU button). If a folder with the specified number does not already exist, a new folder will be created. Subsequent photographs will be stored in the selected folder unless it is already full.

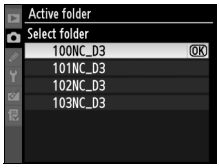
■ *Select Folder*

1 Choose [Select folder].

Highlight [Select folder] and press ▶.

2 Highlight a folder.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight a folder.



3 Select the highlighted folder.

Press ⊛ to select the highlighted folder and return to the shooting menu (to exit without changing the active folder, press the MENU button). Subsequent photographs will be stored in the selected folder.

Folder and File Numbers

If the current folder is numbered 999 and contains 999 pictures or a picture numbered 9999, the shutter-release will be disabled and no further photographs can be taken. To continue shooting, create a folder with a number less than 999, or select an existing folder with a number less than 999 and less than 999 images.

Number of Folders

Additional time may be required for camera startup if the memory card contains a very large number of folders.

File Naming

Photographs are saved using file names consisting of "DSC_" or, in the case of images that use the Adobe RGB color space, "_DSC", followed by a four-digit number and a three-letter extension (e.g., "DSC_0001.JPG"). The [File naming] option is used to select three letters to replace the "DSC" portion of the file name. For information on editing file names, see steps 2 and 3 of "Renaming Shooting Menu Banks" (pg. 292). Note that the portion of the name that can be edited is a maximum of three characters long.

Extensions

The following extensions are used: ".NEF" for NEF (RAW) images, ".TIF" for TIFF (RGB) images, ".JPG" for JPEG images, and ".NDF" for dust off reference data.

Slot 2

Choose the role played by the secondary card slot when two memory cards are inserted in the camera (pg. 71).

Image Quality

Choose image quality (pg. 65).

Image Size

Choose the size at which pictures are recorded (pg. 69).

Image Area

Although the D3 can record photographs with the same diagonal picture angle as a 35mm format camera using a 3 : 2 aspect ratio, it can also be used to record photographs with the smaller DX picture angle or the 5 : 4 aspect ratio (pg. 60).

JPEG Compression

Choose whether to compress JPEG images to a fixed size or to vary file size for improved image quality (pg. 67).

NEF (RAW) Recording

Choose compression and bit-depth options for NEF (RAW) images (pg. 68).

White Balance

Adjust white balance settings (pg. 144).

Set Picture Control

Select from the Picture Controls provided with the camera to instantly adjust image processing settings (pg. 166).

Manage Picture Control

Save and modify custom Picture Control combinations, or copy custom Picture Controls to or from the memory card (pg. 174).

Color Space

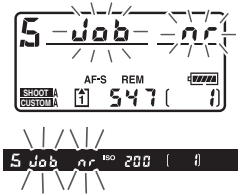
Choose from sRGB and Adobe RGB color spaces (pg. 187).

Active D-Lighting

This option can be used to prevent loss of detail in highlights and shadows (pg. 185). The default setting is [Off].

Long Exp. NR (Long Exposure Noise Reduction)

Choose whether to reduce noise in pictures taken at slow shutter speeds.

Option	Description
On	Photographs taken at shutter speeds slower than 1s are processed to reduce noise. While photographs are being processed, "Job nr" will blink in the shutter speed/aperture displays for a period of time approximately equal to the current shutter speed. In continuous release mode, frame rates will slow and the capacity of the memory buffer will drop. Photographs can not be taken until processing is complete and "Job nr" has cleared from the displays. Noise reduction will not be performed if the camera is turned off before processing is complete. 
Off (default)	Long exposure noise reduction off.

High ISO NR

Photographs taken at high ISO sensitivities can be processed to reduce "noise."

Option		Description
HIGH	**High**	Noise reduction is performed at ISO sensitivities of ISO 2000 and higher. While photographs are being processed, the capacity of the memory buffer will drop. Choose the amount of noise reduction performed from [High], [Normal], and [Low].
NORM	**Normal** (default)	
LOW	**Low**	
	Off	Noise reduction is only performed at sensitivities of HI 0.3 and higher. The amount of noise reduction is less than the amount performed when [Low] is selected for [High ISO NR].

ISO Sensitivity Settings

Adjust ISO sensitivity and ISO sensitivity auto control settings (pp. 108, 110).

Live View

Choose a live view mode and the release mode that will be used when the camera is in live view mode (pg. 91).

Multiple Exposure

Create a single photograph from two to ten exposures (pg. 208).

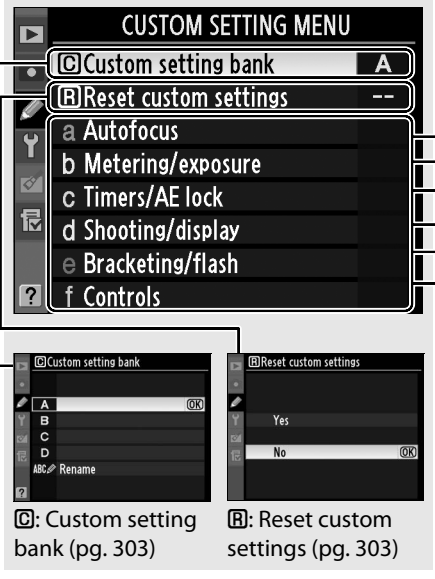
Interval Timer Shooting

Take photographs automatically at pre-selected intervals. Use for time-lapse movies of such subjects as flowers opening or butterflies emerging from cocoons (pg. 213).

Custom Settings: Fine-Tuning Camera Settings

Custom Settings are used to customize camera settings to suit individual preferences. In addition to Custom Settings Ⓒ ([Custom setting bank]) and Ⓡ ([Reset custom settings]), settings in the Custom Settings menu are divided into the six groups shown at right.

Main menu



Ⓒ: Custom setting bank (pg. 303)

Ⓡ: Reset custom settings (pg. 303)

Custom Setting groups

The following Custom Settings are available:

	Custom Setting	Page
Ⓒ	**Custom setting bank**	303
Ⓡ	**Reset custom settings**	303
a	**Autofocus**	
a1	AF-C priority selection	304
a2	AF-S priority selection	305
a3	Dynamic AF area	306
a4	Focus tracking with lock-on	308
a5	AF activation	308
a6	Focus point illumination	309
a7	Focus point wrap-around	310
a8	AF point selection	310
a9	**AF-ON** button	311
a10	Vertical **AF-ON** button	312
b	**Metering/exposure**	
b1	ISO sensitivity step value	313
b2	EV steps for exposure cntrl.	313
b3	EV steps for exposure comp.	313
b4	Easy exposure compensation	314
b5	Center-weighted area	315
b6	Fine tune optimal exposure	315
c	**Timers/AE lock**	
c1	Shutter-release button AE-L	317
c2	Auto meter-off delay	317
c3	Self-timer delay	318
c4	Monitor off delay	318

	Custom Setting	Page
d	**Shooting/display**	
d1	Beep	319
d2	Shooting speed	320
d3	Max. continuous release	320
d4	File number sequence	321
d5	Control panel/viewfinder	322
d6	Shooting info display	323
d7	LCD illumination	324
d8	Exposure delay mode	324
e	**Bracketing/flash**	
e1	Flash sync speed	325
e2	Flash shutter speed	326
e3	Modeling flash	326
e4	Auto bracketing set	327
e5	Auto bracketing (Mode M)	328
e6	Bracketing order	329
f	**Controls**	
f1	Multi selector center button	330
f2	Multi selector	331
f3	Photo info/playback	331
f4	Assign FUNC. button	331
f5	Assign preview button	337
f6	Assign AE-L/AF-L button	338
f7	Customize command dials	339
f8	Release button to use dial	341
f9	No memory card?	342
f10	Reverse indicators	343

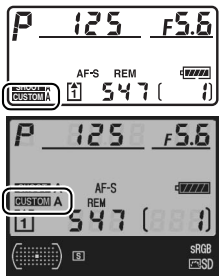
Ⓒ: Custom Setting Bank

Custom Settings are stored in one of four banks. Changes to settings in one bank have no effect on the others. To store a particular combination of frequently-used settings, select one of the four banks and set the camera to these settings. The new settings will be stored in the bank even when the camera is turned off, and will be restored the next time the bank is selected. Different combinations of settings can be stored in the other banks, allowing the user to switch instantly from one combination to another by selecting the appropriate bank from the bank menu.

The default names for the four Custom Settings banks are A, B, C, and D. A descriptive caption can be added using the [Rename] option as described on page 291.

Custom Settings Bank

If settings in the current bank have been modified from default values, the bank letter will appear in the top control panel and shooting information displays. An asterisk will be displayed adjacent to the altered settings in the second level of the Custom Settings menu.



Ⓡ: Reset Custom Settings

Choose whether to restore default settings for the current Custom Settings bank. See page 420 for a list of default settings. Custom Settings are not reset when a two-button reset is performed.

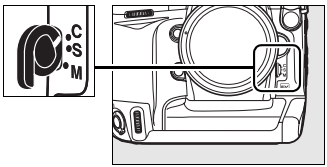
Option	Description
Yes	Restore defaults for the current Custom Settings bank.
No (default)	Exit without changing Custom Settings.

a: Autofocus

a1: AF-C Priority Selection

This option controls whether photographs can be taken whenever the shutter-release button is pressed (*release priority*) or only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*) in continuous-servo AF. To select continuous-servo AF, rotate the focus mode selector to **C**.

Focus mode selector



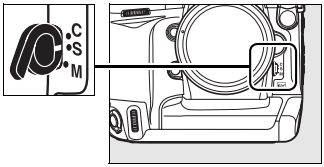
Option	Description
Release (default)	Photos can be taken whenever the shutter-release button is pressed.
Release + focus	Photos can be taken even when the camera is not in focus. In continuous mode, frame rate slows for improved focus if the subject is dark or low contrast.
Focus	Photos can only be taken when the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

Regardless of the option selected, focus will not lock when the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

a2: AF-S Priority Selection

This option controls whether photographs can be taken only when the camera is in focus (*focus priority*) or whenever the shutter-release button is pressed (*release priority*) in single-servo AF. To select single-servo AF, rotate the focus mode selector to **S**.

Focus mode selector



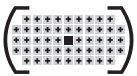
Option	Description
Release	Photos can be taken whenever the shutter-release button is pressed.
Focus (default)	Photos can only be taken when the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

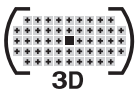
Regardless of the option selected, focus will lock while the in-focus indicator (●) is displayed.

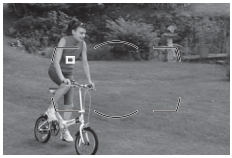
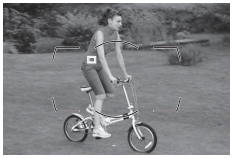
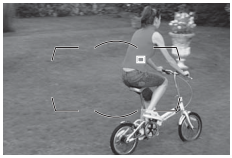
a3: Dynamic AF Area

If the subject leaves the selected focus point when dynamic-area AF ([⊡]; pg. 76) is selected in continuous-servo AF (focus mode **C**; pg. 74), the camera will focus based on information from surrounding focus points. Choose the number of points from 9, 21, and 51 based on subject movement.

Only active focus point is displayed in the viewfinder. Remaining focus points provide information to assist focus operation.

Option	Description
[⊡]9 **9 points** (default)	If the subject leaves the selected focus point, the camera will focus based on information from the surrounding eight focus points. Choose when there is time to compose the photograph or when photographing subjects that are moving predictably (e.g., runners or race cars on a track).
[⊡]21 **21 points**	If the subject leaves the selected focus point, the camera will focus based on information from the surrounding 20 focus points. Choose when photographing subjects that are moving unpredictably (e.g., players at a football game).
[⊡]51 **51 points** 	If the subject leaves the selected focus point, the camera will focus based on information from the surrounding 50 focus points. Choose when photographing subjects that are moving quickly and can not be easily framed in the viewfinder (e.g., birds).

Option	Description
[·]3D **51 points (3D-tracking)** 	If the subject leaves the selected focus point, the camera will use 3D-tracking to track the subject and select a new focus point as required. Use to quickly compose pictures with subjects that are moving erratically from side to side (e.g., tennis players). If the subject leaves the viewfinder, remove your finger from the shutter-release button and recompose the photograph with the subject in the selected focus point.

3D-Tracking

When the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, the colors in the area surrounding the focus point are stored in the camera. Consequently 3D-tracking may not produce the desired results with subjects that are the same color as the background or that occupy a very small area of the frame.

a4: Focus Tracking with Lock-On

This option controls how autofocus adjusts to sudden large changes in the distance to the subject.

Option	Description
AF **Long**	When the distance to the subject changes abruptly, the camera waits for the specified period (long, normal, or short) before adjusting the distance to the subject. This prevents the camera from refocusing when the subject is briefly obscured by objects passing through the frame.
AF **Normal** (default)	
AF **Short**	
Off	The camera immediately adjusts focus when the distance to the subject changes. Use when photographing a series of subjects at varying distances in quick succession.

a5: AF Activation

This option controls whether both the shutter-release button and the **AF-ON** button can be used to initiate autofocus, or whether autofocus is only initiated when the **AF-ON** button is pressed.

Option	Description
Shutter/ AF-ON (default)	Autofocus can be performed with the **AF-ON** button or by pressing the shutter-release button halfway.
AF-ON only	Autofocus can only be performed using the **AF-ON** button.

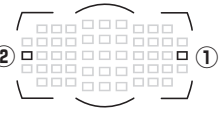
a6: Focus Point Illumination

The options in this menu control whether or not the focus points are illuminated.

Option	Description
Manual focus mode	Choose [On] (the default setting) to display the active focus point in manual focus mode.
Continuous mode	Choose [On] (the default setting) to display the active focus point in **CH** (continuous high-speed) and **CL** (continuous low-speed) modes.

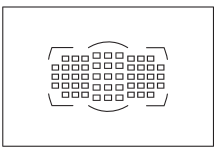
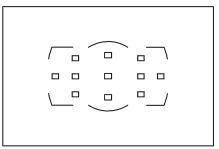
a7: Focus Point Wrap-Around

Choose whether focus-point selection "wraps around" from one edge of the viewfinder to another.

Option	Description
Wrap	Focus-point selection "wraps around" from top to bottom, bottom to top, right to left, and left to right, so that, for example, pressing ▶ when a focus point at the right edge of the viewfinder display is highlighted (①) selects the corresponding focus point at the left edge of the display (②). 
No wrap (default)	The focus-area display is bounded by the outermost focus points so that, for example, pressing ▶ when a focus point at the right edge of the display is selected has no effect.

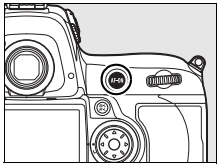
a8: AF Point Selection

Choose the number of focus points available for manual focus-point selection.

Option	Description
AF51 **51 points** (default)	Choose from the 51 focus points shown at right. 
AF11 **11 points**	Choose from the 11 focus points shown at right. Use for quick focus-point selection. 

a9: AF-ON Button

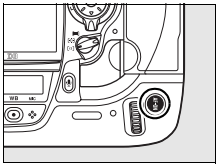
Choose the function performed when the **AF-ON** button is pressed.



Option	Description
AF-ON (default)	Pressing the **AF-ON** button initiates autofocus.
AE/AF lock	Focus and exposure lock while the **AF-ON** button is pressed.
AE lock only	Exposure locks while the **AF-ON** button is pressed.
AE lock (Reset on release)	Exposure locks when the **AF-ON** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time, the shutter is released, or the exposure meters turn off.
AE lock (Hold)	Exposure locks when the **AF-ON** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time or the exposure meters turn off.
AF lock only	Focus locks while the **AF-ON** button is pressed.

a10: Vertical AF-ON Button

Choose the function assigned to the **AF-ON** button for vertical shooting.



Option	Description
Same as AF-ON	Both **AF-ON** buttons perform the function selected for Custom Setting a9.
AF-ON (default)	Pressing the vertical **AF-ON** button initiates autofocus.
AE/AF lock	Focus and exposure lock while the vertical **AF-ON** button is pressed.
AE lock only	Exposure locks while the vertical **AF-ON** button is pressed.
AE lock (Reset on release)	Exposure locks when the vertical **AF-ON** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time, the shutter is released, or the exposure meters turn off.
AE lock (Hold)	Exposure locks when the vertical **AF-ON** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time or the exposure meters turn off.
AF lock only	Focus locks while the vertical **AF-ON** button is pressed.

b: Metering/Exposure

b1: ISO Sensitivity Step Value

This option determines whether adjustments to sensitivity are made in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV.

Option	
1/3	**1/3 step** (default)
1/2	**1/2 step**
1	**1 step**

b2: EV Steps for Exposure Cntrl.

This option determines whether adjustments to shutter speed, aperture, and bracketing are made in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV.

Option		Description
1/3	**1/3 step** (default)	Changes to shutter speed and aperture are in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV. The bracketing increment can be selected from 1/3, 2/3, and 1 EV.
1/2	**1/2 step**	Changes to shutter speed and aperture are in increments equivalent to 1/2 EV. The bracketing increment can be selected from 1/2 and 1 EV.
1	**1 step**	Changes to shutter speed and aperture are in increments equivalent to 1 EV. The bracketing increment is set to 1 EV.

b3: EV Steps for Exposure Comp.

This option determines whether adjustments to exposure compensation are made in increments equivalent to 1/3 EV, 1/2 EV, or 1 EV.

Option	
1/3	**1/3 step** (default)
1/2	**1/2 step**
1	**1 step**

b4: Easy Exposure Compensation

This option controls whether the ± button is needed to set exposure compensation (pg. 132). If [On (Auto reset)] or [On] is selected, the 0 at the center of the exposure display will blink even when exposure compensation is set to ±0.

Option	Description
RESET **On (Auto reset)**	Exposure compensation is set by rotating one of the command dials (see note below). The setting selected using the command dial is reset when the camera or exposure meters turn off (exposure compensation settings selected using the ± button are not reset).
On	As above, except that the exposure compensation value selected using the command dial is not reset when the camera or exposure meters turn off.
Off (default)	Exposure compensation is set by pressing the ± button and rotating the main command dial.

Change Main/Sub

The dial used to set exposure compensation when [On (Auto reset)] or [On] is selected for Custom Setting b4 ([Easy exposure compensation]) depends on the option selected for Custom Setting f7 ([Customize command dials]) > [Change main/sub] (pg. 339).

		Customize command dials > Change main/sub	
		Off (default)	**On**
Exposure mode	P	Sub-command dial	Sub-command dial
	S	Sub-command dial	Main command dial
	A	Main command dial	Sub-command dial
	M	N/A	

b5: Center-Weighted Area

When calculating exposure, center-weighted metering assigns the greatest weight to a circle in the center of the frame. The diameter (ϕ) of this circle can be set to 8, 12, 15, or 20 mm or to the average of the entire frame.

Option	
(•)8	ϕ **8 mm**
(•)12	ϕ **12 mm** (default)
(•)15	ϕ **15 mm**
(•)20	ϕ **20 mm**
⊙Avg	**Average**

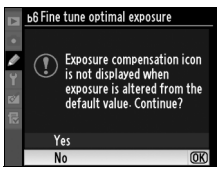
Note that unless [Average] is selected, the diameter is fixed at 12 mm when a non-CPU lens is used, regardless of the setting selected for [Non-CPU lens data] in the setup menu (pg. 220). When [Average] is selected, the average of the entire frame will be used for both CPU and non-CPU lenses.

b6: Fine Tune Optimal Exposure

Use this option to fine-tune the exposure value selected by the camera. Exposure can be fine tuned separately for each metering method by from +1 to –1 EV in steps of 1/6 EV.

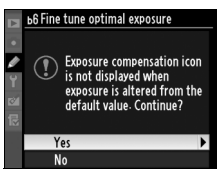
1 Select Custom Setting b6.

Highlight Custom Setting b6 ([Fine tune optimal exposure]) and press ▶.



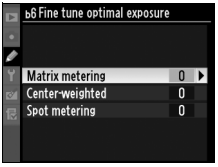
2 Select [Yes].

The message shown at right will be displayed; highlight [Yes] and press ▶ to proceed, or select [No] to exit without altering exposure.



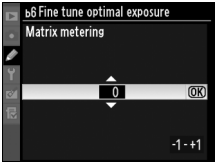
3 Select a metering method.

Highlight [Matrix metering], [Center-weighted], or [Spot metering] and press ▶.



4 Choose an exposure value.

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose an exposure value from +1 to –1 EV. Press ⊛ to save changes and exit.



Fine-Tuning Exposure

Exposure can be fine-tuned separately for each Custom Settings bank and is not affected by two-button resets. Note that as the exposure compensation (⊠) icon is not displayed, the only way to determine how much exposure has been altered is to view the amount in the fine-tuning menu. Exposure compensation (pg. 132) is preferred in most situations.

c: Timers/AE Lock

c1: Shutter-Release Button AE-L

At the default setting of [Off], exposure only locks when the **AE-L/AF-L** button is pressed. If [On] is selected, exposure will also lock when the shutter-release button is pressed halfway.

c2: Auto Meter-off Delay

This option controls how long the camera continues to meter exposure when no operations are performed. Choose from 4 s, 6 s, 8 s, 16 s, 30 s, 1 minute, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 30 minutes, or until the camera is turned off ([No limit]). The shutter-speed and aperture displays in the top control panel and viewfinder turn off automatically when the exposure meters turn off.

Option	
4s	**4 s**
6s	**6 s** (default)
8s	**8 s**
16s	**16 s**
30s	**30 s**
1m	**1 min.**
5m	**5 min.**
10m	**10 min.**
30m	**30 min.**
∞	**No limit**

Choose a shorter meter-off delay for longer battery life. When the camera is powered by an optional EH-6 adapter, the auto meter-off delay is equivalent to [No limit].

c3: Self-Timer Delay

This option controls the length of the shutter release delay in self-timer mode. Choose from 2 s, 5 s, 10 s, and 20 s.

Option	
⏲2s	**2 s**
⏲5s	**5 s**
⏲10s	**10 s** (default)
⏲20s	**20 s**

c4: Monitor off Delay

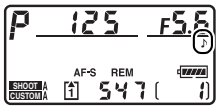
This option controls how long the monitor remains on when no operations are performed. Choose from 10 s, 20 s, 1 minute, 5 minutes, or 10 minutes. Choose a shorter monitor-off delay for longer battery life. Regardless of the setting chosen, the monitor remains on if no operations are performed for about ten minutes when the camera is powered by an optional EH-6 AC adapter.

Option	
10s	**10 s**
20s	**20 s** (default)
1m	**1 min.**
5m	**5 min.**
10m	**10 min.**

d: Shooting/Display

d1: Beep

Choose [High] or [Low] to sound a beep when the self-timer is used or the camera focuses in single-servo autofocus (note that a beep will not sound if [Release] is selected for Custom Setting a2 ([AF-S priority selection], pg. 305).

Option	Description
H **High**	Choose the pitch of the beep from [High] and [Low]. A ♪ icon is displayed in the top control panel and shooting information displays. 
L **Low**	
Off (default)	Turn the beep speaker off.

d2: Shooting Speed

Choose the maximum frame advance rate for **CH** (continuous high-speed) and **CL** (continuous low-speed) modes. Note that the frame advance rate may drop below the selected value at slow shutter speeds, or when using VR (vibration reduction) mode with VR lenses.

Option	Description
Continuous high-speed	In **CH** (continuous high-speed) mode, the frame advance rate for DX format (pg. 61) can be selected from 9 (the default setting), 10, and 11 frames per second (fps). Regardless of the setting chosen, the maximum frame rate for other formats is fixed at 9 fps.
Continuous low-speed	Choose the frame advance rate for **CL** (continuous low-speed) mode from values between 1 and 9 fps. The default setting is 5 fps.

d3: Max. Continuous Release

The maximum number of shots that can be taken in a single burst in continuous mode can be set to any value between 1 and 130.

The Memory Buffer

Regardless of the option selected for Custom Setting d3, shooting will slow when the memory buffer fills. See page 423 for more information on the capacity of the memory buffer.

d4: File Number Sequence

When a photograph is taken, the camera names the file by adding one to the last file number used. This option controls whether file numbering continues from the last number used when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera.

Option	Description
On (default)	When a new folder is created, the memory card formatted, or a new memory card inserted in the camera, file numbering continues from the last number used or from the largest file number in the current folder, whichever is higher. If a photograph is taken when the current folder contains a photograph numbered 9999, a new folder will be created automatically and file numbering will begin again from 0001.
Off	File numbering is reset to 0001 when a new folder is created, the memory card is formatted, or a new memory card is inserted in the camera. Note that a new folder is created automatically if a photograph is taken when the current folder contains 999 photographs.
RESET **Reset**	Same as for [On], except that the next photograph taken is assigned a file number by adding one to the largest file number in the current folder. If the folder is empty, file numbering is reset to 0001.

☑ File Number Sequence

If the current folder is numbered 999 and contains either 999 photographs or a photograph numbered 9999, the shutter-release button will be disabled and no further photographs can be taken. Choose [Reset] for Custom Setting d4 ([File number sequence]) and then either format the current memory card or insert a new memory card.

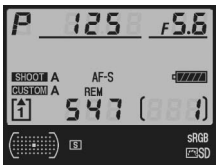
d5: Control Panel/Viewfinder

Choose the information displayed in the viewfinder and rear control panel.

Option	Description
Rear control panel	Choose from [ISO sensitivity] (ISO; the default setting) and [Exposures remaining] (). If [Exposures remaining] is selected, ISO sensitivity will only be displayed while the ISO button is pressed.
Viewfinder display	Choose from [Frame count] (; the default setting) and [Exposures remaining] (). Note that regardless of the option selected, memory buffer capacity will be shown while the shutter-release button is pressed.

d6: Shooting Info Display

At the default setting of [Auto] (**AUTO**), the color of the lettering in the information display (pg. 14) will automatically change from black to white or white to black to maintain contrast with the background. To always use the same color lettering, select [Manual] and choose [Dark on light] (**B**; black lettering) or [Light on dark] (**W**; white lettering). Monitor brightness will automatically be adjusted for maximum contrast with the selected text color.



Dark on light

Light on dark

d7: LCD Illumination

At the default setting of [Off], the control panel backlights (LCD illuminator) will only light while the power switch is in the ☀ position. If [On] is selected, the control panels will be illuminated while the exposure meters are active (pg. 50). Select [Off] for increased battery life.

d8: Exposure Delay Mode

At the default setting of [Off], shutter is released when the shutter-release button is pressed. When shooting with [Tripod] selected in live view mode (pg. 97) or in situations where the slightest camera movement can blur pictures, [On] can be selected to delay shutter release until about 1 s after the shutter-release button is pressed and the mirror is raised.

e: Bracketing/Flash

e1: Flash Sync Speed

This option controls flash sync speed.

Option	Description
1/250 s (Auto FP)	Auto FP high-speed sync is used with SB-800, SB-600, and SB-R200 flash units. If other flash units are used, shutter speed is set to $^1/_{250}$ s. When the camera shows a shutter speed of $^1/_{250}$ s in exposure mode P or A, auto FP high-speed sync will be activated if the actual shutter speed is faster than $^1/_{250}$ s.
1/250 s (default)	Flash sync speed set to $^1/_{250}$ s.
1/200 s	Flash sync speed set to $^1/_{200}$ s.
1/160 s	Flash sync speed set to $^1/_{160}$ s.
1/125 s	Flash sync speed set to $^1/_{125}$ s.
1/100 s	Flash sync speed set to $^1/_{100}$ s.
1/80 s	Flash sync speed set to $^1/_{80}$ s.
1/60 s	Flash sync speed set to $^1/_{60}$ s.

Fixing Shutter Speed at the Flash Sync Speed Limit

To fix shutter speed at the sync speed limit in shutter-priority auto or manual exposure modes, select the next shutter speed after the slowest possible shutter speed (30 s or bulb). An X (flash sync indicator) will be displayed in the viewfinder and top control panel.

e2: Flash Shutter Speed

This option determines the slowest shutter speed available when using front- or rear-curtain sync or red-eye reduction in programmed auto or aperture-priority auto exposure modes (regardless of the setting chosen, shutter speeds can be as slow as 30 s in shutter-priority auto and manual exposure modes or at flash settings of slow sync, slow rear-curtain sync, or red-eye reduction with slow sync). Options range from $^{1}/_{60}$ s ([1/60 s], the default setting) to 30 s ([30 s]).

e3: Modeling Flash

If [On] (the default setting) is selected when the camera is being used with an optional flash unit that supports the Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS; pg. 190), the flash unit mounted on the camera and any CLS-compatible remote flash units will emit a modeling flash when the camera depth-of-field preview button is pressed (pg. 117). No modeling flash is emitted if [Off] is selected.

e4: Auto Bracketing Set

Choose the setting or settings bracketed when auto bracketing (pg. 134) is in effect. Choose [AE & flash] (AE⚡; the default setting) to perform both exposure and flash-level bracketing, [AE only] (AE) to bracket only exposure, [Flash only] (⚡) to perform only flash-level bracketing, or [WB bracketing] (WB) to perform white-balance bracketing (pg. 139). Note that white balance bracketing is not available at image quality settings of NEF (RAW) or NEF (RAW) + JPEG.

e5: Auto Bracketing (Mode M)

This option determines which settings are affected when [AE & flash] or [AE only] is selected for Custom Setting e4 in manual exposure mode.

Option		Description
	Flash/speed (default)	Camera varies shutter speed (Custom Setting e4 set to [AE only]) or shutter speed and flash level (Custom Setting e4 set to [AE & flash]).
	Flash/speed/ aperture	Camera varies shutter speed and aperture (Custom Setting e4 set to [AE only]) or shutter speed, aperture, and flash level (Custom Setting e4 set to [AE & flash]).
	Flash/ aperture	Camera varies aperture (Custom Setting e4 set to [AE only]) or aperture and flash level (Custom Setting e4 set to [AE & flash]).
	Flash only	Camera varies flash level only (Custom Setting e4 set to [AE & flash]).

Flash bracketing is performed only with i-TTL or AA flash control. If a setting other than [Flash only] is selected and a flash is not used, ISO sensitivity will be fixed at the value for the first shot, regardless of the setting selected for ISO sensitivity auto control (pg. 110).

e6: Bracketing Order

At the default setting of [MTR]>[under]>[over] (N), bracketing is performed in the order described on pages 136 and 140. If [Under]>[MTR]>[over] (−→+) is selected, shooting will proceed in order from the lowest to the highest value.

f: Controls

f1: Multi Selector Center Button

This option determines what operations can be performed by pressing the center of the multi selector in shooting and playback modes.

▮▮ *Shooting Mode*

Selecting [Shooting mode] displays the following options:

Option	Description
RESET **Select center focus point** (default)	Pressing the center of the multi selector in shooting mode selects the center focus point.
Not used	Pressing the center of the multi selector has no effect when the camera is in shooting mode.

▮▮ *Playback Mode*

Selecting [Playback mode] displays the following options:

Option	Description
Thumbnail on/off (default)	Press the center of the multi selector to toggle between full-frame and thumbnail playback.
View histograms	In both full-frame and thumbnail playback, a histogram is displayed while the center of the multi selector is pressed.
Zoom on/off	Press the center of the multi selector to toggle between full-frame or thumbnail playback and playback zoom. Choose the initial zoom setting from [Low magnification], [Medium magnification], and [High magnification]. The zoom display will center on the active focus point.

f2: Multi Selector

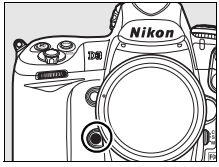
If [Reset meter-off delay] is selected, operating the multi selector when the exposure meters are off (pg. 50) will activate the exposure meters. If [Do nothing] (the default option) is selected, the exposure meters will not be activated when the multi selector is pressed.

f3: Photo Info/Playback

At the default setting of [Info▲▼/Playback◀▶], pressing ▲ or ▼ in full-frame playback changes the photo information displayed, while pressing ◀ or ▶ displays additional images. To reverse the role of the multi selector buttons so that pressing ▲ or ▼ displays additional images and pressing ◀ or ▶ changes the photo information displayed, select [Info◀▶/Playback▲▼].

f4: Assign FUNC. Button

Choose the role played by the **Fn** button, either by itself ([FUNC. button press]) or when used in combination with the command dials ([FUNC. button+dials]).



■■ *FUNC. Button Press*

Selecting [FUNC. button press] for Custom Setting f4 displays the following options:

Option	Description
Preview *	Press the **Fn** button to preview depth of field (pg. 117).
FV lock *	Press the **Fn** button to lock flash value (SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, and SB-R200 flash units only, pg. 201). Press again to cancel FV lock.

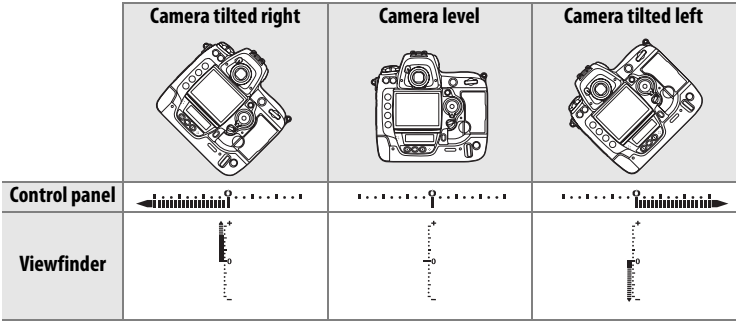
Option	Description
AE/AF lock	Focus and exposure lock while the **Fn** button is pressed.
AE lock only	Exposure locks while the **Fn** button is pressed.
AE lock (Reset on release) *	Exposure locks when the **Fn** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time, the shutter is released, or the exposure meters turn off.
AE lock (Hold) *	Exposure locks when the **Fn** button is pressed, and remains locked until the button is pressed a second time or the exposure meters turn off.
AF lock only	Focus locks while the **Fn** button is pressed.
Flash off	The flash will not fire in photos taken while the **Fn** button is pressed.
Bracketing burst	If the **Fn** button is pressed while exposure or flash bracketing is active in single frame release mode, all shots in the current bracketing program will be taken each time the shutter-release button is pressed. If white balance bracketing is active or continuous release mode (mode **CH** or **CL**) is selected, the camera will repeat the bracketing burst while the shutter-release button is held down (in single frame release mode, white balance bracketing will be repeated at the frame rate for **CH** release mode).
Matrix metering	Matrix metering is activated while the **Fn** button is pressed.
Center-weighted	Center-weighted metering is activated while the **Fn** button is pressed.
Spot metering	Spot metering is activated while the **Fn** button is pressed.

Option	Description
Virtual horizon *	The electronic analog exposure displays act as a tilt meter (pg. 333).
None (default)	No operation is performed when the **Fn** button is pressed.

* This option can not be used in combination with [FUNC. button+dials] (pg. 334). Selecting this options displays a message and sets [FUNC. button+dials] to [None]. If another option is selected for [FUNC. button+dials] while this setting is active, [FUNC. button press] will be set to [None].

Virtual Horizon

When [Virtual horizon] is selected for [FUNC. button press], the electronic analog exposure displays in the viewfinder and top control panel act as a horizontal level when the **Fn** button is pressed.



Note that the display may not be accurate when the camera is tilted at a sharp angle forward or back.

■■ *FUNC. Button+Dials*

Selecting [FUNC. button+dials] for Custom Setting f4 displays the following options:

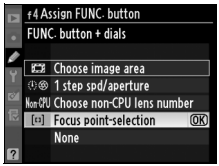
Option	Description
Choose image area (default)	The **Fn** button and main command dial can be used to select the image area (pg. 60). The image area can not be changed while shooting a multiple exposure (pg. 208).
1 step spd/ aperture	If the **Fn** button is pressed when the command dials are rotated, changes to shutter speed (exposure modes S and M) and aperture (exposure modes A and M) are made in increments of 1 EV.
Choose non-CPU lens number	Press the **Fn** button and rotate a command dial to choose a lens number specified using the [Non-CPU lens data] option (pg. 220).
Focus point selection	Press the **Fn** button and rotate the command dials for vertical shooting to choose a focus point (pg. 335).
None	No operation is performed when the command dials are rotated while the **Fn** button is pressed.

Portrait (Tall-Orientation) Photographs

To use the command dials to select the focus point when framing shots in portrait ("tall") orientation:

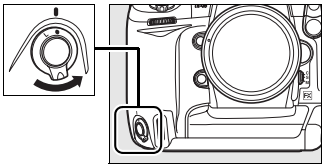
1 Choose [Focus point selection].

Select [Focus point selection] for Custom Setting f4 ([Assign FUNC. button]) > [FUNC. button+dials].



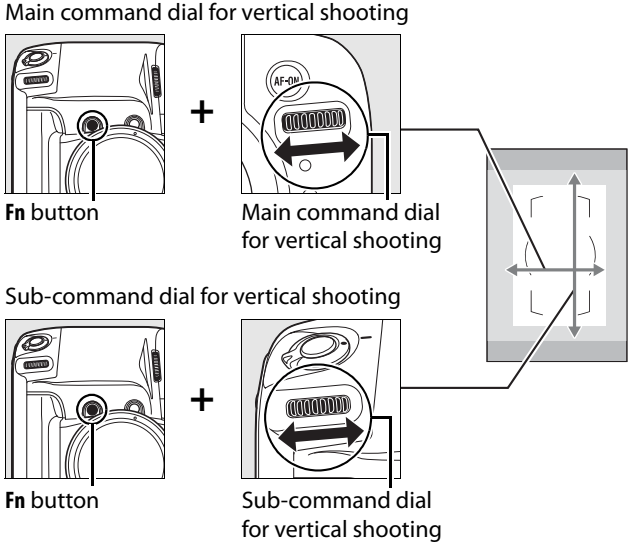
2 Unlock the shutter-release button for vertical shooting.

Vertical shutter-release button lock

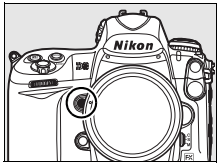


3 Select the focus point.

With the camera in portrait ("tall") orientation, select a focus point by pressing the **Fn** button and rotating the command dials for vertical shooting. Use the main command dial to move the focus area selection left or right, the sub-command dial to move it up or down.

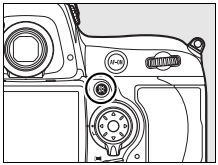


f5: Assign Preview Button



Choose the role played by the depth-of-field preview button, either by itself ([Preview button press]) or when used in combination with the command dials ([Preview + command dials]). The options available are the same as for [FUNC. button press] (pg. 331) and [FUNC. button+dials] (pg. 334), except that the default option for [Preview button press] is [Preview] and that [Preview + command dials] lacks a [Focus point selection] option (the default setting for [Preview + command dials] is [None]).

f6: Assign AE-L/AF-L Button



Choose the role played by the **AE-L/AF-L** button, either by itself ([AE-L/AF-L button press]) or when used in combination with the command dials ([AE-L/AF-L+command dials]). The options available for [AE-L/AF-L button press] are the same as for [FUNC. button press] (pg. 331), except that [AE-L/AF-L button press] defaults to [AE/AF lock] and has an additional **AF-ON** option (if this option is selected, pressing the **AE-L/AF-L** button has the same effect as pressing the **AF-ON** button to initiate autofocus). The options available for [AE-L/AF-L+command dials] are the same as for [FUNC. button+dials] (pg. 334), except that [AE-L/AF-L +command dials] defaults to [None] and lacks [1 step spd/aperture] and [Focus point selection] options.

f7: Customize Command Dials

This option controls the operation of the main and sub-command dials.

Option	Description
Reverse rotation	Controls the direction of the command dials. Choose [No] (the default option) for normal command dial operation, or [Yes] to reverse the rotation of the command dials. This setting also applies to the command dials for vertical shooting.
Change main/sub	At the default setting of [Off], the main command dial controls shutter speed and the sub-command dial controls aperture. If [On] is selected, the main command dial will control aperture and the sub-command dial shutter speed. This setting also applies to the command dials for vertical shooting.

Option	Description
Aperture setting	At the default setting of [Sub-command dial], aperture can only be adjusted with the sub-command dial (or with the main command dial if [On] is selected for [Change main/sub]). If [Aperture ring] is selected, aperture can only be adjusted with the lens aperture ring and the camera aperture display will show aperture in increments of 1 EV (aperture for type G lenses is still set using the sub-command dial). Live view is not available when [Aperture ring] is selected and a CPU lens with an aperture ring is attached. Note that regardless of the setting chosen, the aperture ring must be used to adjust aperture when a non-CPU lens is attached.
Menus and playback	At the default setting of [Off], the multi selector is used to choose the picture displayed during full-frame playback, highlight thumbnails, and navigate menus. If [On] is selected, the main command dial can be used to choose the picture displayed during full-frame playback, move the cursor left or right during thumbnail playback, and move the menu highlight bar up or down. The sub-command dial is used to display additional photo information in full-frame playback and to move the cursor up or down during thumbnail playback. While menus are displayed, rotating the sub-command dial right displays the sub-menu for the selected option, while rotating it left displays the previous menu. To make a selection, press ▶, the center of the multi selector, or ⊛.

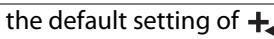
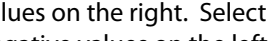
f8: Release Button to Use Dial

This option allows adjustments that are normally made by holding a button and rotating a command dial to be made by rotating the command dial after the button is released. At the default setting of [No], the button must be pressed while the command dial is rotated. If [Yes] is selected, the setting can be changed by rotating the command dial after the button is released. Setting ends when the button is pressed again, the shutter-release button is pressed halfway, or any of the **MODE**, ☒, **BKT**, ϟ, **ISO**, **QUAL**, or **WB** button is pressed. Except when [No limit] is selected for Custom Setting c2 [Auto meter-off delay] or an optional EH-6 AC adapter is used, setting will also end when the exposure meters turn off.

f9: No Memory Card?

At the default setting of [Enable release], the shutter can be released when no memory card is inserted, although no pictures will be recorded (they will however be displayed in the monitor in demo mode). If [Release locked] is selected, the shutter-release button is only enabled when a memory card is inserted in the camera. Note that when photographs are being captured to a computer using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately), photographs are not recorded to the camera memory card and the shutter will be enabled regardless of the setting chosen for this option.

f10: Reverse Indicators

At the default setting of  (+0−), the exposure indicators in the top control panel and shooting information display are displayed with positive values on the left and negative values on the right. Select  (−0+) to display negative values on the left and positive values on the right.

The Setup Menu: Camera Setup

The setup menu contains the options listed below. For information on using the setup menu, see "Tutorial: Camera Menus" (pg. 26).

Option	See page
Format memory card	345
LCD brightness	345
Lock mirror up for cleaning [1]	395
Video mode	346
HDMI	346
World time	347
Language	347
Image comment	348
Auto image rotation	349
Voice memo	248
Voice memo overwrite	249
Voice memo button	249
Audio output	254
USB	350
Dust off ref photo	351
Battery info	353
Wireless transmitter [2]	261
Image authentication	354
Save/load settings	355
GPS	223
Virtual horizon	357
Non-CPU lens data	220
AF fine tune	358
Firmware version	359

1 Not available when battery is low.

2 Only available when optional WT-4 wireless transmitter is connected and [MTP/PTP] selected for [USB] (pg. 350).

Format Memory Card

Format the card in the selected slot. *Note that formatting permanently deletes all pictures and other data on the card*. Before formatting, be sure to make backup copies as required.

During Formatting

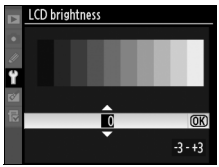
Do not turn the camera off or remove memory cards during formatting.

Two-Button Format

Memory cards can also be formatted by pressing the FORMAT (🗑 and MODE) buttons for about two seconds (pg. 45).

LCD Brightness

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose from seven settings for monitor brightness. Choose higher values for increased brightness, lower values for reduced brightness.



Lock Mirror up for Cleaning

Lock the mirror in the up position to allow inspection or manual cleaning of the low-pass filter that protects the camera image sensor (pg. 395).

Video Mode

When connecting the camera to a television or VCR via the A/V out connector, be sure the camera video mode matches the device video standard (NTSC or PAL).

HDMI

The camera is equipped with an HDMI (**H**igh-**D**efinition **M**ultimedia **I**nterface) connector, allowing pictures to be played back on high-definition televisions or monitors using a type A cable (available separately from commercial suppliers). Before connecting the camera to high-definition device, choose the HDMI format from the options below.

Option	Description
AUTO **Auto** (default)	The camera automatically selects the appropriate format.
480p **480p (progressive)**	640 × 480 (progressive) format
576p **576p (progressive)**	720 × 576 (progressive) format
720p **720p (progressive)**	1,280 × 720 (progressive) format
1080i **1080i (interlaced)**	1,920 × 1,080 (interlaced) format

The camera monitor turns off automatically when an HDMI device is connected.

World Time

Change time zones, set the camera clock, choose the date display order, and turn daylight saving time on or off.

Option	Description
Time zone	Choose a time zone. The camera clock is automatically set to the time in the new time zone.
Date and time	Set the camera clock (pg. 39).
Date format	Choose the order in which the day, month, and year are displayed.
Daylight saving time	Turn daylight saving time on or off. The camera clock will automatically be advanced or set back one hour. The default setting is [Off].

Language

Choose a language for camera menus and messages. The following options are available.

De	Deutsch	German
En	English	English
Es	Español	Spanish
Fi	Suomi	Finnish
Fr	Français	French
It	Italiano	Italian
Nl	Nederlands	Dutch
Pl	Polski	Polish

Pt	Português	Portuguese
Ru	Русский	Russian
Sv	Svenska	Swedish
繁	中文(繁體)	Traditional Chinese
简	中文(简体)	Simplified Chinese
日	日本語	Japanese
한	한글	Korean

Image Comment

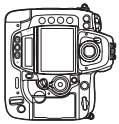
Add a comment to new photographs as they are taken. Comments can be viewed in ViewNX (supplied) or Capture NX (available separately) (pg. 387). The comment is also visible on the third page of the photo information display.

- [Done]: Save changes and return to the setup menu.
- [Input comment]: Input a comment as described on page 292. Comments can be up to 36 characters long.
- [Attach comment]: Select this option to attach the comment to all subsequent photographs. [Attach comment] can be turned on and off by highlighting it and pressing ▶.

Auto Image Rotation

Photographs taken while [On] (the default option) is selected contain information on camera orientation, allowing them to be rotated automatically during playback (pg. 287) or when viewed in ViewNX or Capture NX (available separately) (pg. 387). The following orientations are recorded:

Landscape (wide) orientation



Camera rotated 90° clockwise

Camera rotated 90° counter-clockwise

Camera orientation is not recorded when [Off] is selected. Choose this option when taking photographs with the lens pointing up or down.

Rotate Tall

To automatically rotate "tall" (portrait-orientation) photographs for display during playback, select [On] for the [Rotate tall] option in the playback menu (pg. 287).

Voice Memo

The voice memo menu contains options for recording voice memos during shooting. See "Voice Memos: Recording Voice Memos" (pg. 248).

Voice Memo Overwrite

This option determines whether the voice memo for the last photograph recorded can be overwritten when the camera is in shooting mode. See "Voice Memos: Recording Voice Memos" (pg. 249).

Voice Memo Button

This option controls the operation of the 🎙 button. See "Voice Memos: Recording Voice Memos" (pg. 249).

Audio Output

Choose output options for voice memo playback. See "Voice Memos: Playing Voice Memos" (pg. 254).

USB

Choose a USB option for connection to a computer or PictBridge printer. Choose [MTP/PTP] (the default setting) when connecting to a PictBridge printer or an optional WT-4 wireless transmitter or when using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately; see page 387). See page 257 for information on selecting a USB option for use with Nikon Transfer (supplied).

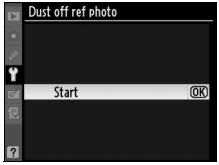
Dust off Ref Photo

Acquire reference data for the Image Dust Off option in Capture NX (available separately; for more information, see the Capture NX manual).

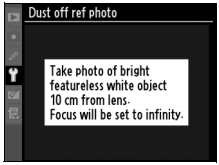
[Dust off ref photo] is available only when a CPU lens is mounted on the camera. A lens with a focal length of at least 50 mm is recommended. When using a zoom lens, zoom all the way in.

1 Select [Start].

Highlight [Start] and press ⊛.



The message shown at right will be displayed and "rEF" will appear in the viewfinder and control panel displays. To exit without acquiring image dust off data, press MENU.



2 Frame a featureless white object in the viewfinder.

With the lens about ten centimeters (four inches) from a well-lit, featureless white object, frame the object so that it fills the viewfinder and then press the shutter-release button halfway.

In autofocus mode, focus will automatically be set to infinity; in manual focus mode, set focus to infinity manually.

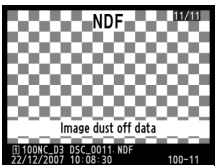
3 Acquire dust off reference data.

Press the shutter-release button the rest of the way down to acquire Image Dust Off reference data. The monitor turns off when the shutter-release button is pressed.

If the reference object is too bright or too dark, the camera may be unable to acquire Image Dust Off reference data and the message shown at right will be displayed. Choose another reference object and repeat the process from step 1.

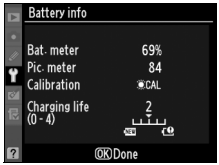
Image Dust Off Reference Data

The same reference data can be used for photographs taken with different lenses or at different apertures. Reference images can not be viewed using computer imaging software. A grid pattern is displayed when reference images are viewed on the camera; histograms and highlights are not displayed.



Battery Info

View information on the battery currently inserted in the camera.



Item	Description
Bat. meter	The current battery level expressed as a percentage.
Pic. meter	The number of times the shutter has been released with the current battery since the battery was last charged. Note that the camera may sometimes release the shutter without recording a photograph, for example when measuring preset white balance.
Calibration	• **[CAL]**: Due to repeated use and recharging, calibration is required to ensure that battery level can be measured accurately; recalibrate battery before charging (pg. 433). • **[—]**: Calibration not required.
Charging life	A five-level display showing battery age. 0 (NEW) indicates that battery performance is unimpaired, 4 ( ) that the battery has reached the end of its charging life and should be replaced. Note that batteries charged at temperatures under about 5 °C (41 °F) may show a temporary drop in charging life; the charging life display will however return to normal once the battery has been recharged at a temperature of about 20 °C (68 °F) or higher.

Wireless Transmitter

This option is used to adjust settings for connection to a wireless network, using an optional WT-4 wireless transmitter. See "Connections: Wireless and Ethernet Networks" (pg. 261).

Image Authentication

Choose whether to embed image authentication information in new photographs as they are taken, allowing alterations to be detected using Nikon's optional Image Authentication software. Image authentication information can not be embedded in existing photographs. Photographs taken with image authentication on are marked with a icon on the file information and overview data pages of the photo information display (pp. 232, 240).

Option	Description
On	Image authentication information embedded in new photographs as they are taken.
Off (default)	Image authentication information not embedded in new photographs.

Camera Control Pro 2

Image authentication information is not embedded in TIFF (RGB) photographs recorded directly to a computer using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately).

Copies

Image authentication information is not embedded in copies created using the options in the retouch menu (pg. 360).

Save/Load Settings

Select [Save settings] to save the following settings to the memory card in slot 1 (if the memory card is full, an error will be displayed; pg 412).

Menu	Option
Playback	Display mode
	Image review
	After delete
	Rotate tall
Shooting (all banks)	Shooting menu bank
	File naming
	Slot 2
	Image quality
	Image size
	Image area
	JPEG compression
	NEF (RAW) recording
	White balance (with fine tuning and presets d-0–d-4)
	Set Picture Control
	Color space
	Active D-Lighting
	Long exp. NR
	High ISO NR
	ISO sensitivity settings
	Live view
Custom settings (all banks)	All Custom Settings except [Reset custom settings]

Menu	Option
Setup	Video mode
	HDMI
	World time (excepting date and time)
	Language
	Image comment
	Auto image rotation
	Voice memo
	Voice memo overwrite
	Voice memo button
	Audio output
	USB
	Image authentication
	GPS
	Non-CPU lens data
My Menu	All My Menu items

Settings saved using the D3 can be restored by selecting [Load settings]. Note that [Save/load settings] is only available when a memory card is inserted in slot 1, and that the [Load settings] option is only available if the card in slot 1 contains saved settings (the memory card in slot 2 can not be used to save or load settings).

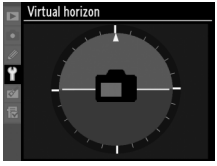
Saved Settings

Settings are saved in a file named NCSETUP2. The camera will not be able to load settings if the file name is changed.

GPS

Adjust settings for connection to a GPS unit (pg. 223).

Virtual Horizon



Display a virtual horizon based on information from the camera orientation sensor.

Tilting the Camera

The virtual horizon display is not accurate when the camera is tilted at a sharp angle forward or back.

See Also

For information on using the electronic analog exposure displays as a tilt meter, see Custom Setting f4 ([Assign FUNC. button] > [FUNC. button press]; pg. 331).

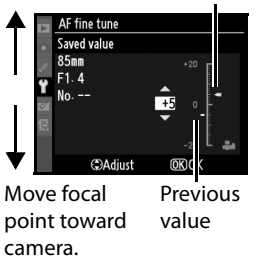
Non-CPU Lens Data

By specifying lens data (lens focal length and maximum aperture) for up to nine non-CPU lenses, the user can gain access to a variety of CPU lens functions (pg. 220).

AF Fine Tune

Fine-tune focus for up to 20 lenses. AF tuning is not recommended in most situations; use only when required.

Option	Description
AF fine tune (On/Off)	• **[On]**: Turn AF tuning on. • **[Off]** (default): Turn AF tuning off.
Saved value	Tune AF for the current lens (CPU lenses only). Press ▲ or ▼ to choose a value between +20 and –20. Values for up to 20 lenses can be stored.
Default	Choose the AF tuning value used when no previously saved value exists for the current lens (CPU lenses only).



Option	Description
List saved values	List previously saved AF tuning values. If a value exists for the current lens, it will be shown with a ▮ icon. To delete a lens from the list, highlight the desired lens and press 🗑. To change a lens identifier (for example to choose an identifier that is the same as the last two digits of the lens serial number to distinguish it from other lenses of the same type), highlight the desired lens and press ▶. The menu shown at right will be displayed; press ▲ or ▼ to choose an identifier and press OK to save changes and exit.

☑ AF Tuning

The camera may be unable to focus at minimum range or at infinity when AF tuning is applied.

☑ Live View (Tripod) Mode

Tuning is not applied to contrast-detect autofocus when [Tripod] is selected in live view mode (pg. 97).

✎ Saved Value

Only one value can be stored per lens. If a teleconverter is used, separate values can be stored for each combination of lens and teleconverter.

Firmware Version

View the current camera firmware version.

The Retouch Menu: Creating Retouched Copies

The options in the retouch menu are used to create trimmed, or retouched copies of the photographs on the memory card. The retouch menu is only displayed when a memory card containing photographs is inserted in the camera. For information on using the shooting menu, see "Tutorial: Camera Menus" (pg. 26).

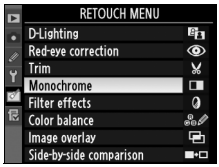
Option	See page
D-Lighting *	363
Red-eye correction *	364
Trim	365
Monochrome *	366
Filter effects *	367
Color balance *	367
Image overlay	368
Side-by-side comparison	371

* Not available with photographs taken with [Monochrome] selected for [Set Picture Control] (pg. 168).

Creating Retouched Copies

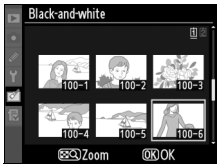
1 Select an item in the retouch menu.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight an item, ▶ to select. Depending on the option selected, a menu may be displayed; highlight an option and press ▶.

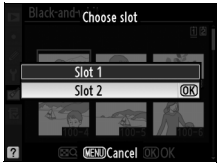


2 Select a picture.

The pictures on the memory card will be displayed. Use the multi selector to highlight a picture (to view the highlighted picture full screen, press and hold the ⊠Q button).

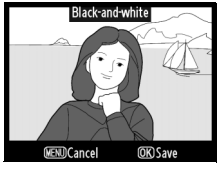


If two memory cards are inserted, the slot can be selected by holding the ⊠Q button and pressing ▲. The menu shown at right will be displayed (pg. 230); highlight the desired slot and press OK.



3 Display retouch options.

Press OK to display retouch options (see the section for the selected option for details). To exit without creating a retouched copy, press MENU.



4 Create a retouched copy.

Press ⊛ to create a retouched copy. Retouched copies are indicated by a ✎ icon.

Retouching Copies

Copies created with [Trim] can not be further modified. D-lighting, red-eye correction, filter effects, and color balance can not be applied to monochrome copies. Otherwise the options in the retouch menu can each be applied once to existing copies, although this may result in loss of detail.

Image Quality

Except in the case of copies created with [Trim] (pg. 366) and [Image overlay], copies created from JPEG images are the same size and quality as the original, copies created from NEF (RAW) photos are saved as large fine-quality JPEG images, and copies created from TIFF (RGB) photos are saved as fine-quality JPEG images of the same size as the original. Size-priority compression is used when copies are saved in JPEG format.

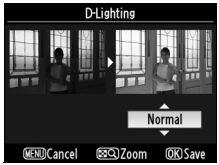
D-Lighting

D-Lighting brightens shadows, making it ideal for dark or backlit photographs.

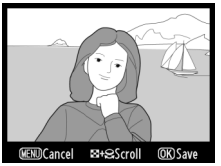
Before

After

Press ▲ or ▼ to choose the amount of correction performed. The effect can be previewed in the edit display. Press ⓚ to copy the photograph.



Red-Eye Correction

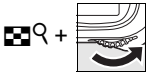
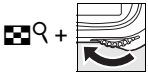


This option is used to correct "red-eye" caused by the flash, and is available only with photographs taken using the flash. The photograph selected for red-eye correction is previewed as shown at right. Confirm the effects of red-eye correction and create a copy as described in the following table. Note that red-eye correction may not always produce the expected results and may in very rare circumstances be applied to portions of the image that are not affected by red-eye; check the preview thoroughly before proceeding.

To	Use	Description
Zoom in	⊠Q +	Press ⊠Q button and rotate main command dial right to zoom in, left to zoom out. While photo is zoomed in, press ⊠Q and use multi selector to view areas of image not visible in monitor. Keep multi selector pressed to scroll rapidly to other areas of frame. While ⊠Q button is pressed, area currently visible in monitor is indicated by yellow border. Press OK to cancel zoom.
Zoom out	⊠Q +	
View other areas of image	⊠Q +	
Cancel zoom	OK	
Create copy	OK	If the camera detects red-eye in the selected photograph, a copy will be created that has been processed to reduce its effects. No copy will be created if the camera is unable to detect red-eye.

Trim

Create a cropped copy of the selected photograph. The selected photograph is displayed with the selected crop shown in yellow; create a cropped copy as described in the following table.

To	Use	Description
Reduce size of crop		Press button and rotate main command dial right to reduce the size of the crop.
Increase size of crop		Press button and rotate main command dial left to increase the size of the crop.
Change crop aspect ratio		Rotate the main command dial to switch between aspect ratios of 3 : 2, 4 : 3, and 5 : 4.
Move crop		Use multi selector to move crop to other area of image.
Preview crop		Press center of multi selector to preview cropped image.
Create copy	OK	Save the current crop as a separate file.

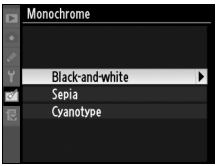
Trim: Image Quality and Size

Copies created from NEF (RAW), NEF (RAW) + JPEG, or TIFF (RGB) photos have an image quality (pg. 65) of JPEG fine; cropped copies created from JPEG photos have the same image quality as the original. The size of the copy varies with crop size and aspect ratio.

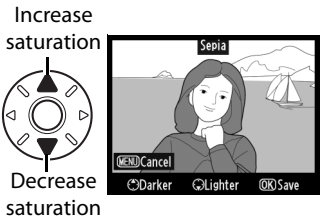
Aspect ratio	Possible sizes
3 : 2	3,424 × 2,280, 2,560 × 1,704, 1,920 × 1,280, 1,280 × 856, 960 × 640, 640 × 424
4 : 3	3,424 × 2,568, 2,560 × 1,920, 1,920 × 1,440, 1,280 × 960, 960 × 720, 640 × 480
5 : 4	3,216 × 2,568, 2,400 × 1,920, 1,808 × 1,440, 1,200 × 960, 896 × 720, 608 × 480

Monochrome

Copy photographs in [Black-and-white], [Sepia], or [Cyanotype] (blue and white monochrome).

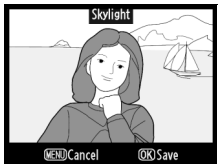


Selecting [Sepia] or [Cyanotype] displays a preview of the selected image; press ▲ to increase color saturation, ▼ to decrease. Press ⊛ to create a monochrome copy.



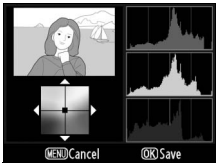
Filter Effects

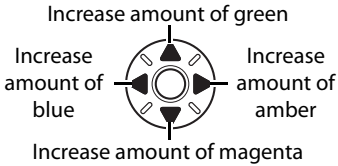
Choose from the following color filter effects. After adjusting filter effects as described below, press ⊛ to copy the photograph.

Option	Description
Skylight	Creates the effect of a skylight filter, making the picture less blue. The effect can be previewed in the monitor as shown at right. 
Warm filter	Creates a copy with warm tone filter effects, giving the copy a "warm" red cast. The effect can be previewed in the monitor.

Color Balance

Use the multi selector to create a copy with modified color balance as shown below. The effect is displayed in the monitor together with red, green, and blue histograms (pg. 233) giving the distribution of tones in the copy. Press ⊛ to copy the photograph.





Creating JPEG Copies of NEF (RAW) Pictures

To create a JPEG copy of an NEF (RAW) picture, select the NEF (RAW) picture for [Color balance] and press ⊛ without modifying color balance. The JPEG copy will have an image quality of "fine" and a size of [L].

Image Overlay

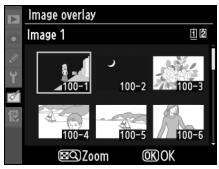
Image overlay combines two existing NEF (RAW) photographs to create a single picture that is saved separately from the originals with results that are noticeably better than photographs combined in an imaging application because they make use of RAW data from the camera image sensor. The new picture is saved at current image quality and size settings; before creating an overlay, set image quality and size (pp. 65, 69; all options are available). To create a NEF (RAW) copy, choose an image quality of [NEF (RAW)].

1 Select [Image overlay].

Highlight [Image overlay] in the retouch menu and press ▶. The dialog shown at right will be displayed, with [Image 1] highlighted.

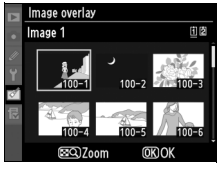
2 Display NEF (RAW) images.

Press ⊛. A picture selection dialog will be displayed.



3 Highlight a photograph.

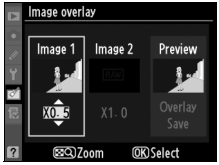
Press ▲▼◀ or ▶ to highlight the first photograph in the overlay. To view the highlighted photograph full frame, press and hold the ⊡Q button.



4 Select the highlighted photograph.

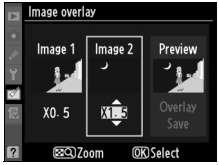
Press ⊛ to select the highlighted photograph and return to the preview display. The selected image will appear as [Image 1].

5 Set gain.



Optimize exposure for the overlay by pressing ▲ or ▼ to select the gain for image 1 from values between 0.1 and 2.0. The default value is 1.0; selecting 0.5 cuts gain in half, while selecting 2.0 doubles gain. The effects of gain are visible in the [Preview] column.

6 Select the second photograph.



Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight [Image 2]. Repeat Steps 2–5 to select the second photo and adjust gain.

7 Highlight the [Preview] column.

Press ◀ or ▶ to highlight the [Preview] column.

8 Preview the overlay.

Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight [Overlay] and press ⊛ (to save the overlay without displaying a preview, highlight [Save] and press ⊛). To return to Step 7 and select new photos or adjust gain, press ⊠Q.

9 Save the overlay.

Press ⊛ while the preview is displayed to save the overlay. After an overlay is created, the resulting image will be displayed full-frame in the monitor.

Image Overlay

Only NEF (RAW) photographs created with the D3 can be selected for image overlay. Other images are not displayed in the selection screen. Only NEF (RAW) photographs with the same image area and bit-depth can be combined.

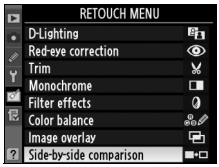
The overlay has the same photo info (including date of recording, metering, shutter speed, aperture, exposure mode, exposure compensation, focal length, and image orientation) and values for white balance and picture control as the photograph selected for [Image 1]. Overlays saved in NEF (RAW) format use the compression selected for [Type] in the [NEF (RAW) recording] menu and have the same bit depth as the original images; JPEG overlays are saved using size-priority compression.

Side-by-Side Comparison

Compare retouched copies to the original photographs.

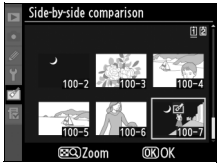
1 Select [Side-by-side comparison].

Highlight [Side-by-side comparison] and press ▶ to display a picture-selection dialog.

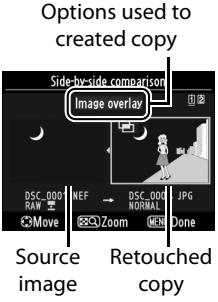


2 Select a picture.

Use the multi selector to highlight a picture and press ⊛. Only retouched copies (shown by a ☑ icon) or photographs that have been retouched can be selected. To view the highlighted photograph full frame, press and hold the ⊡Q button.



3 Compare the copy with the original.



The source image is displayed on the left, the retouched copy on the right, with the options used to create the copy listed at the top of the display. Press the multi selector in the direction indicated by the arrow adjacent to the highlighted image (▲ ▼ ◀ or ▶) to switch between the source image and the retouched copy. To view the highlighted picture full frame, press and hold the ⊡Q button. If the copy was created from two images using [Image overlay], press ▲ or ▼ to view the other source image. To exit to playback mode, press the MENU button. To return to Step 2 with the highlighted image selected, press ⊛ or the center of the multi selector.

My Menu: Creating a Custom Menu

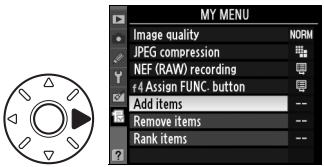
The [My Menu] option can be used to create and edit a customized list of options from the playback, shooting, Custom Settings, setup, and retouch menus for quick access (up to 20 items).

Options can be added, deleted, and reordered as described below. For information on basic menu operations, see "Tutorial: Camera Menus" (pg. 26).

Adding Options to My Menu

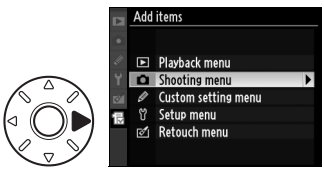
1 Select [Add items].

In My Menu (), highlight [Add items] and press ▶



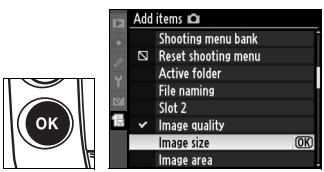
2 Select a menu.

Highlight the name of the menu containing the option you wish to add and press ▶.



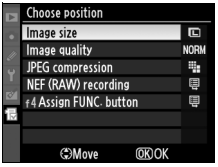
3 Select an item.

Highlight the desired menu item and press OK.



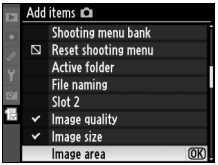
4 Position the new item.

Press ▲ or ▼ to move the new item up or down in My Menu. Press ⊛ to add the new item.



5 View My Menu.

The items currently displayed in My Menu are indicated by a check mark. Items indicated by a ⊠ icon can not be selected. Repeat steps 1–4 to select additional items.



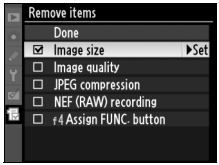
Deleting Options from My Menu

1 Select [Remove items].

In My Menu (), highlight [Remove items] and press ▶.

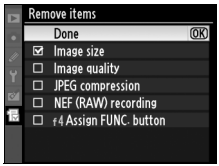
2 Select items.

Highlight items and press ▶ to select or deselect. Selected items are indicated by a check mark.



3 Select [Done].

Highlight [Done] and press OK. A confirmation dialog will be displayed.



4 Delete the selected items.

Press OK to delete the selected items.

Deleting Items in My Menu

To delete the item currently highlighted in My Menu, press the 🗑 button. A confirmation dialog will be displayed; press 🗑 again to remove the selected item from My Menu.

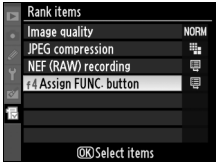
Reordering Options in My Menu

1 Select [Rank items].

In My Menu (), highlight [Rank items] and press ▶.

2 Select an item.

Highlight the item you wish to move and press OK.



3 Position the item.

Press ▲ or ▼ to move the item up or down in My Menu and press OK. Repeat Steps 2–3 to reposition additional items.

Reordering Items in My Menu

The item currently highlighted in My Menu can be moved up or down by pressing the button and pressing ▲ or ▼. Release the button when the operation is complete.

Technical Notes

– Camera Care, Options, and Resources

This chapter covers the following topics:

Compatible Lenses ..... **pg. 378**

Other Accessories ..... **pg. 383**

Caring for the Camera ..... **pg. 390**

Storage ..... pg. 390

Cleaning ..... pg. 390

Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions ..... **pg. 398**

Troubleshooting ..... **pg. 402**

Error Messages ..... **pg. 409**

Appendix ..... **pg. 417**

Specifications ..... **pg. 427**

Compatible Lenses

Lens/accessory \ Camera setting		Focus mode			Exposure mode		Metering system		
		S C	M (with electronic rangefinder)	M	P S	A M	3D	Color	
CPU lenses[1]	Type G or D AF Nikkor[2] AF-S, AF-I Nikkor	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	✔[3]
	PC Micro 85mm f/2.8D[4]	—	✔[5]	✔	—	✔[6]	✔	—	✔[3]
	AF-S / AF-I Teleconverter[7]	✔[8]	✔[8]	✔	✔	✔	✔	—	✔[3]
	Other AF Nikkor (except lenses for F3AF)	✔[9]	✔[9]	✔	✔	✔	—	✔	✔[3]
	AI-P Nikkor	—	✔[10]	✔	✔	✔	—	✔	✔[3]
Non-CPU lenses[11]	AI-, AI-modified, Nikkor or Nikon Series E lenses[12]	—	✔[10]	✔	—	✔[13]	—	✔[14]	✔[15]
	Medical-Nikkor 120mm f/4	—	✔	✔	—	✔[16]	—	—	—
	Reflex-Nikkor	—	—	✔	—	✔[13]	—	—	✔[15]
	PC-Nikkor	—	✔[5]	✔	—	✔[17]	—	—	✔
	AI-type Teleconverter[18]	—	✔[8]	✔	—	✔[13]	—	✔[14]	✔[15]
	PB-6 Bellows Focusing Attachment[19]	—	✔[8]	✔	—	✔[20]	—	—	✔
	Auto extension rings (PK-series 11A, 12, or 13; PN-11)	—	✔[8]	✔	—	✔[13]	—	—	✔

1 IX-Nikkor lenses can not be used.
2 Vibration Reduction (VR) supported with VR lenses.
3 Spot metering meters selected focus point.
4 The camera's exposure metering and flash control systems do not work properly when shifting and/or tilting the lens, or when an aperture other than the maximum aperture is used.
5 Electronic rangefinder can not be used with shifting or tilting.
6 Manual exposure mode only.
7 Can be used with AF-S and AF-I lenses only (pg. 381).
8 With maximum effective aperture of f/5.6 or faster.

9 When focusing at minimum focus distance with AF 80–200mm f/2.8, AF 35–70mm f/2.8, AF 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5 <New>, or AF 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5 lens at maximum zoom, in-focus indicator may be displayed when image on matte screen in viewfinder is not in focus. Adjust focus manually until image in viewfinder is in focus.
10 With maximum aperture of f/5.6 or faster.
11 Some lenses can not be used (see page 380).
12 Range of rotation for AI 80–200mm f/2.8 ED tripod mount is limited by camera body. Filters can not be exchanged while AI 200–400mm f/4 ED is mounted on camera.
13 If maximum aperture is specified using [Non-CPU lens data] (pg. 220), aperture value will be displayed in viewfinder and top control panel.
14 Can be used only if lens focal length and maximum aperture are specified using [Non-CPU lens data] (pg. 220). Use spot or center-weighted metering if desired results are not achieved.
15 For improved precision, specify lens focal length and maximum aperture using [Non-CPU lens data] (pg. 220).
16 Can be used in manual exposure modes at shutter speeds slower than $^{1}/_{125}$ s. If maximum aperture is specified using [Non-CPU lens data] (pg. 220), aperture value will be displayed in viewfinder and top control panel.
17 Exposure determined by presetting lens aperture. In aperture-priority auto exposure mode, preset aperture using lens aperture ring before performing AE lock or shifting lens. In manual exposure mode, preset aperture using lens aperture ring and determine exposure before shifting lens.
18 Exposure compensation required when used with AI 28–85mm f/3.5–4.5, AI 35–105mm f/3.5–4.5, AI 35–135mm f/3.5–4.5, or AF-S 80–200mm f/2.8D. See teleconverter manual for details.
19 Requires PK-12 or PK-13 auto extension ring. PB-6D may be required depending on camera orientation.
20 Use preset aperture. In aperture-priority auto exposure mode, set aperture using focusing attachment before determining exposure and taking photograph.
• PF-4 Reprocopy Outfit requires PA-4 Camera Holder.

Incompatible Accessories and Non-CPU Lenses

The following accessories and non-CPU lenses can NOT be used with the D3:

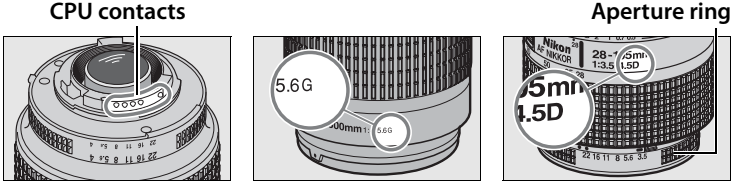
- TC-16AS AF teleconverter
- Non-AI lenses
- Lenses that require the AU-1 focusing unit (400mm f/4.5, 600mm f/5.6, 800mm f/8, 1200mm f/11)
- Fisheye (6mm f/5.6, 7.5mm f/5.6, 8mm f/8, OP 10mm f/5.6)
- 2.1cm f/4
- Extension Ring K2
- 180–600mm f/8 ED (serial numbers 174041–174180)
- 360–1200mm f/11 ED (serial numbers 174031–174127)
- 200–600mm f/9.5 (serial numbers 280001–300490)
- AF lenses for the F3AF (AF 80mm f/2.8, AF 200mm f/3.5 ED, AF Teleconverter TC-16)
- PC 28mm f/4 (serial number 180900 or earlier)
- PC 35mm f/2.8 (serial numbers 851001–906200)
- PC 35mm f/3.5 (old type)
- Reflex 1000mm f/6.3 (old type)
- Reflex 1000mm f/11 (serial numbers 142361–143000)
- Reflex 2000mm f/11 (serial numbers 200111–200310)

Lens f-number

The f-number given in lens names is the maximum aperture of the lens.

Recognizing CPU and Type G and D Lenses

CPU lenses can be identified by the presence of CPU contacts, type G and D lenses by a letter on the lens barrel. Type G lenses are not equipped with a lens aperture ring.



CPU lens | Type G lens | Type D lens

The AF-S/AF-I Teleconverter

The AF-S/AF-I teleconverter can be used with the following AF-S and AF-I lenses:

- AF-S VR Micro 105mm f/2.8G ED [1]
- AF-S VR 200mm f/2G ED
- AF-S VR 300mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S 300mm f/2.8D ED II
- AF-S 300mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-I 300mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S 300mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-S 400mm f/2.8D ED II
- AF-S 400mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-I 400mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S 500mm f/4D ED II [2]
- AF-S 500mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-I 500mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-S 600mm f/4D ED II [2]
- AF-S 600mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-I 600mm f/4D ED [2]
- AF-S VR 70–200mm f/2.8G ED
- AF-S 80–200mm f/2.8D ED
- AF-S VR 200–400mm f/4G ED [2]
- AF-S NIKKOR 400mm f/2.8G ED VR
- AF-S NIKKOR 500mm f/4G ED VR [2]
- AF-S NIKKOR 600mm f/4G ED VR [2]

1 Autofocus not supported.

2 Autofocus not supported when used with AF-S Teleconverter TC-17E II/TC-20E II.

Compatible Non-CPU Lenses

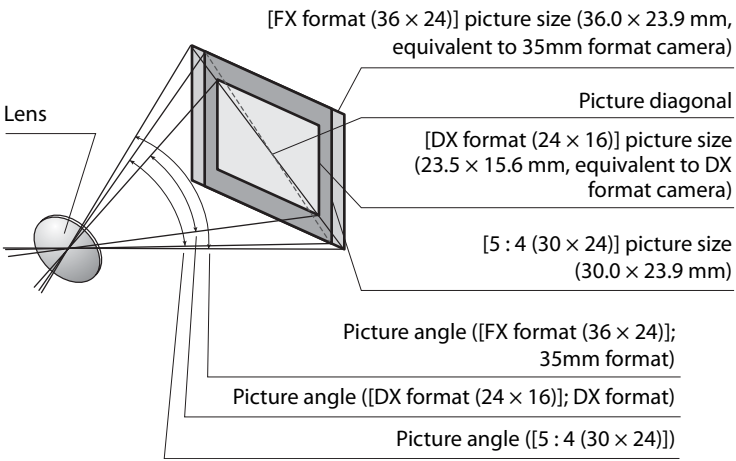
If lens data are specified using [Non-CPU lens data] (pg. 220), many of the features available with CPU lenses can also be used with non-CPU lenses. If lens data are not specified, color matrix metering can not be used, and center-weighted metering is used when matrix metering is selected.

Non-CPU lenses can only be used in exposure modes **A** and **M**, when aperture must be set using the lens aperture ring. If the maximum aperture has not been specified using [Non-CPU lens data], the camera aperture display will show the number of stops from maximum aperture; the actual aperture value must be read off the lens aperture ring. Aperture-priority auto will be selected automatically in exposure modes **P** and **S**. The exposure-mode indicator (**P** or **S**) in the top control panel will blink, and **A** will be displayed in the viewfinder.

Picture Angle and Focal Length

The D3 can be used with Nikon lenses for 35mm (135) format cameras. If [Auto DX crop] is on (the default setting) and a 35mm format lens is attached, the picture angle will be the same as a frame of 35mm film (36.0 × 23.9 mm); if a DX lens is attached, the picture angle will automatically be adjusted to 23.5 × 15.6 mm (DX format).

To choose a picture angle different from that of the current lens, turn [Auto DX crop] off and select from [FX format (36 × 24)], [DX format (24 × 16)], and [5 : 4 (30 × 24)]. If a 35mm format lens is attached, the picture angle could be reduced by 1.5 × by selecting [DX format (24 × 16)], exposing a smaller area, or the aspect ratio could be changed by selecting [5 : 4 (30 × 24)].



The [DX format (24 × 16)] picture angle is about 1.5 times smaller than the 35mm format picture angle, while the [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] picture angle is about 1.1 times smaller. To calculate the focal length of lenses in 35mm format when [DX format (24 × 16)] is selected, multiply the focal length of the lens by about 1.5, or by about 1.1 when [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] is selected (for example, the effective focal length of a 50mm lens in 35mm format would be 75 mm when [DX format (24 × 16)] is selected, or 55 mm when [5 : 4 (30 × 24)] is selected).

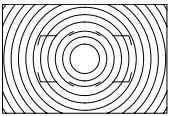
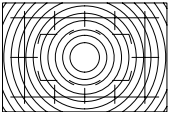
Other Accessories

At the time of writing, the following accessories were available for the D3.

Power sources	• **Rechargeable Li-ion Battery EN-EL4a, EN-EL4** (pp. 32, 34): Additional EN-EL4a/EN-EL4 batteries are available from local retailers and Nikon service representatives. These batteries can be recharged and calibrated using an MH-22 or MH-21 quick charger. • **Quick Charger MH-22, MH-21** (pp. 32, 433): The MH-22, MH-21 can be used to recharge and calibrate EN-EL4a and EN-EL4 batteries. • **AC Adapter EH-6**: The EH-6 can be used to power the camera for extended periods.
Wireless LAN adapters	• **Wireless Transmitter WT-4**: Connects the camera to wireless and Ethernet networks. The photographs on the camera memory card can be viewed by computers on the same network or copied to a computer for long-term storage. The camera can also be controlled from any computer on the network using Camera Control Pro 2 (available separately). Note that the WT-4 requires an independent power source; an EH-6 AC adapter or an EN-EL3e battery is recommended. See the WT-4 manual for details.

Viewfinder eyepiece accessories

- **Focusing Screens**: The focusing screens available for the D3 are listed below.

Type B Brite View clear-matte VI focusing screen		A type B focusing screen is supplied with the camera.
Type E clear-matte VI focusing screen		Type E focusing screens are etched with a grid, making them suitable for copying and architectural photography. Best results are achieved with PC-Nikkor lenses.

- **Magnifier DG-2**: The DG-2 magnifies the scene displayed in the viewfinder. Use for close-up photography, copying, telephoto lenses, and other tasks that call for added precision. DK-18 eyepiece adapter (available separately) required.
- **Antifog Finder Eyepiece DK-14, DK-17A**: These viewfinder eyepieces prevent fogging in humid or cold conditions. The DK-17A is equipped with a safety lock.
- **Rubber Eyepiece Cup DK-19**: The DK-19 makes the image in the viewfinder easier to see, preventing eye fatigue.

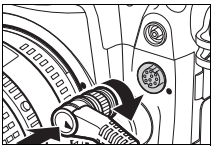
Viewfinder eyepiece accessories	• **Diopter-adjustment viewfinder lenses**: To accommodate individual differences in vision, viewfinder lenses are available with diopters of –3, –2, 0, +1, and +2 m^{-1} (values with camera diopter control centered at –1 m^{-1}). Use diopter adjustment lenses only if the desired focus can not be achieved with the built-in diopter adjustment control (–3 to +1 m^{-1}). Test diopter adjustment lenses before purchase to ensure that the desired focus can be achieved. The DK-17C is equipped with a safety lock. • **Magnifying Eyepiece DK-17M**: The DK-17M magnifies the view through the viewfinder by approximately 1.2 × for greater precision when framing. • **Right-Angle Magnifying Viewing Attachment DR-5/Right-Angle Viewing Attachment DR-4**: The DR-5 and DR-4 attach to the viewfinder eyepiece at a right angle, allowing the image in the viewfinder to be viewed from above when the camera is in the horizontal shooting position. The DR-5 can also magnify the view through the viewfinder by 2 × for greater precision when framing (note that the edges of the frame will not be visible when the view is magnified). • **Eyepiece Adapter DK-18**: The DK-18 is used when attaching the DG-2 Magnifier or DR-3 Right-Angle Viewing Attachment to the D3.

Filters	• Nikon filters can be divided into three types: screw-in, slip-in, and rear-interchange. Use Nikon filters; filters manufactured by other makers may interfere with autofocus or electronic range finding. • The D3 can not be used with linear polarizing filters. Use the C-PL circular polarizing filter instead. • The NC and L37C filters are recommended for protecting the lens. • To prevent moiré, use of a filter is not recommended when the subject is framed against a bright light, or when a bright light source is in the frame. • Center-weighted metering is recommended with filters with exposure factors (filter factors) over 1× (Y44, Y48, Y52, O56, R60, X0, X1, C-PL, ND2S, ND4, ND4S, ND8, ND8S, ND400, A2, A12, B2, B8, B12).
Optional flash units	• **Nikon Speedlights SB-800, SB-600, and SB-400** • **Nikon Wireless Remote Speedlight SB-R200** (Controlled remotely using the SB-800 flash unit or SU-800 wireless Speedlight commander.) • **Wireless Speedlight Commander SU-800** See page 191 for more information.
PC card adapters	• **EC-AD1 PC Card Adapter**: The EC-AD1 PC card adapter allows Type I CompactFlash memory cards to be inserted in PCMCIA card slots.

Software	• **Capture NX**: A complete photo editing package. • **Camera Control Pro 2**: Control the camera remotely from a computer and save photographs directly to the computer hard disk. • **Image Authentication**: Determine whether photographs taken with image authentication on have been modified after shooting. **Note**: Use the latest versions of Nikon software. Most Nikon software offers an auto update feature when the computer is connected to the Internet.
Body cap	• **Body Cap BF-1A**: The BF-1A keeps the mirror, viewfinder screen, and low-pass filter free of dust when a lens is not in place.

Remote terminal accessories

The D3 is equipped with a ten-pin remote terminal for remote control and automatic photography. The terminal is provided with a cap, which protects the contacts when the terminal is not in use. The following accessories can be used (all lengths are approximate):



Accessory	Description	Length
Remote Cord MC-22	Remote shutter release with blue, yellow, and black terminals for connection to a remote shutter-triggering device, allowing control via sound or electronic signals.	1 m (3 ft. 3 in.)
Remote Cord MC-30	Remote shutter release; can be used to reduce camera shake or keep the shutter open during a time exposure.	80 cm (2 ft. 7 in.)
Remote Cord MC-36	Remote shutter release; can be used for interval timer photography or to reduce camera shake or keep the shutter open during a time exposure. Equipped with back-lit control panel, shutter-release lock for use in bulb photography, and timer that beeps at one-second intervals.	85 cm (2 ft. 9 in.)
Extension Cord MC-21	Can be connected to ML-3 or MC-series 20, 22, 23, 25, 30, or 36. Only one MC-21 can be used at a time.	3 m (9 ft. 10 in.)
Connecting Cord MC-23	Connects two cameras for simultaneous operation.	40 cm (1 ft. 4 in.)
Adapter Cord MC-25	Ten-pin to two-pin adapter cord for connection to devices with two-pin terminals, including the MW-2 radio control set, MT-2 intervalometer, and ML-2 modulite control set.	20 cm (8 in.)
GPS Adapter Cord MC-35	Connects GPS devices to D3 via PC cable supplied by manufacturer of GPS device (pg. 223).	35 cm (14 in.)
Modulite Remote Control Set ML-3	Allows infrared remote control at ranges of up to 8 m (26 in.).	—

■■ *Approved Memory Cards*

The following cards have been tested and approved for use in the D3:

SanDisk

Extreme IV	SDCFX4	8 GB
		4 GB
		2 GB
Extreme III	SDCFX3	8 GB
		4 GB
		2 GB
		1 GB
Ultra II	SDCFH	8 GB
		4 GB
		2 GB
		1 GB
Standard	SDCFB	4 GB
		2 GB
		1 GB

Lexar Media

Professional UDMA	300 ×	8 GB
		4 GB
		2 GB
Platinum II	80 ×	2 GB
		1 GB
		512 MB
	60 ×	4 GB
Professional	133 × WA	8 GB
		4 GB
		2 GB
		1 GB
	80 × Lt	2 GB
		512 MB

Microdrive

DSCM-11000	1 GB
3K4-2	2 GB
3K4-4	4 GB
3K6	6 GB

Other cards have not been tested. For more details on the above cards, please contact the manufacturer.

Caring for the Camera

Storage

When the camera will not be used for an extended period, remove the battery, and store the battery in a cool, dry area with the terminal cover in place. To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. Do not store your camera with naphtha or camphor moth balls or in locations that:

- are poorly ventilated or subject to humidities of over 60%
- are next to equipment that produces strong electromagnetic fields, such as televisions or radios
- are exposed to temperatures above 50 °C (122 °F) or below –10 °C (14 °F)

Cleaning

Camera body	Use a blower to remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off sand or salt with a cloth lightly dampened in distilled water and dry thoroughly. **Important**: *Dust or other foreign matter inside the camera may cause damage not covered under warranty.*
Lens, mirror, and viewfinder	These glass elements are easily damaged. Remove dust and lint with a blower. If using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent the discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and clean with care.
Monitor	Remove dust and lint with a blower. When removing fingerprints and other stains, wipe the surface lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Do not apply pressure, as this could result in damage or malfunction.

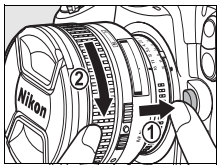
Do not use alcohol, thinner, or other volatile chemicals.

Replacing the Focusing Screen

A type B clear-matte VI focusing screen is inserted in the camera at shipment. To insert an optional type E clear-matte VI focusing screen for D3 cameras (pg. 384):

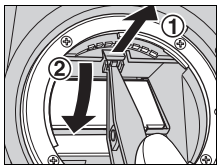
1 Remove the lens.

Turn the camera off and remove the lens.



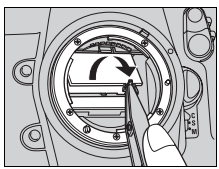
2 Unlatch the screen holder.

Using the tweezers supplied with the focusing screen, pull the focusing screen latch towards you. The screen holder will spring open.



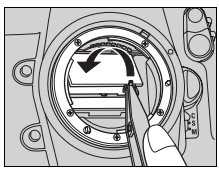
3 Remove the existing screen.

Remove the existing screen, using the supplied tweezers and being careful to handle the screen by the tab to avoid scratches.



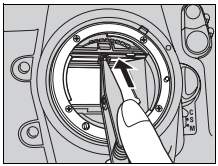
4 Insert the replacement screen.

Using the tweezers and handling the screen by the tab, set the replacement screen in the holder.



5 Latch the screen holder.

Push the front edge of holder upward until it clicks into place.



Replacing Focusing Screens

Do not touch the surface of the mirror or focusing screens.

Framing Grids

The display in type E focusing screens may be slightly out of position depending on how the focusing screen is placed.

Replacing the Clock Battery

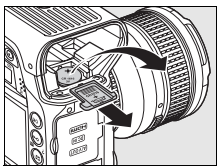
The camera clock is powered by a CR1616 lithium battery with a life of about four years. If the CLOCK icon is displayed in the top control panel while the exposure meters are on, the battery is running low and needs to be replaced. When the battery is exhausted, the CLOCK icon will blink while the exposure meters are on. Photographs can still be taken but will not be stamped with the correct time and date, and interval timer photography will not function correctly. Replace the battery as described below.

1 Remove the main battery.

The clock battery chamber is located on the roof of the main battery chamber. Turn the camera off and remove the EN-EL4a battery.

2 Open the clock battery chamber.

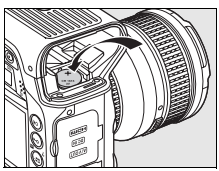
Slide the clock battery chamber cover toward the front of the main battery chamber.



3 Remove the clock battery.

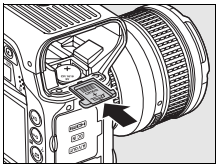
4 Insert the replacement battery.

Insert a new CR1616 lithium battery so that the positive side (the side marked with "+" and the battery name) is visible.



5 Close the clock battery chamber.

Slide the clock battery chamber cover towards the back of the main battery chamber until it clicks into place.



6 Replace the main battery.

Reinsert the EN-EL4a.

7 Set the camera clock.

Set the camera to the current date and time (pg. 39). Until the date and time have been set, the CLOCK icon will flash in the top control panel.

Inserting the Clock Battery

Insert the clock battery in the correct orientation. Inserting the battery incorrectly could not only prevent the clock from functioning but could damage the camera.

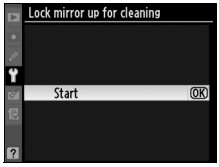
The Low-Pass Filter

The image sensor that acts as the camera's picture element is fitted with a low-pass filter to prevent moiré. If you suspect that dirt or dust on the filter is appearing in photographs, you can clean the filter as described below. Note, however, that the filter is extremely delicate and easily damaged. Nikon recommends that the filter be cleaned only by Nikon-authorized service personnel.

1 Charge the battery or connect an AC adapter.

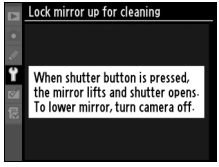
A reliable power source is required when inspecting or cleaning the low-pass filter. If the battery level is below (60%), turn the camera off and insert a fully-charged EN-EL4a battery or connect an optional EH-6 AC adapter.

2 Select [Lock mirror up for cleaning].



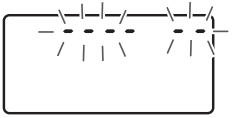
Remove the lens and turn the camera on. Highlight [Lock mirror up for cleaning] in the setup menu (pg. 344) and press ▶ (note that this option is not available at battery levels of or below).

3 Press OK.



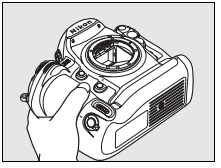
The message shown at right will be displayed in the monitor and a row of dashes will appear in the top control panel and viewfinder. To restore normal operation without inspecting the low-pass filter, turn the camera off.

4 Raise the mirror.



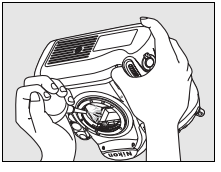
Press the shutter-release button all the way down. The mirror will be raised and the shutter curtain will open, revealing the low-pass filter. The display in the viewfinder will turn off and the row of dashes in the top control panel will blink.

5 Examine the low-pass filter.



Holding the camera so that light falls on the low-pass filter, examine the filter for dust or lint. If no foreign objects are present, proceed to Step 7.

6 Clean the filter.



Remove any dust and lint from the filter with a blower. Do not use a blower-brush, as the bristles could damage the filter. Dirt that can not be removed with a blower can only be removed by Nikon-authorized service personnel. Under no circumstances should you touch or wipe the filter.

7 Turn the camera off.

The mirror will return to the down position and the shutter curtain will close. Replace the lens or body cap.

☑ Use a Reliable Power Source

The shutter curtain is delicate and easily damaged. If the camera powers off while the mirror is raised, the curtain will close automatically. To prevent damage to the curtain, observe the following precautions:

- Do not turn the camera off or remove or disconnect the power source while the mirror is raised.
- If the battery runs low while the mirror is raised, a beep will sound and the self-timer lamp will blink to warn that the shutter curtain will close and the mirror will be lowered after about two minutes. End cleaning or inspection immediately.

☑ Foreign Matter on the Low-Pass Filter

Nikon takes every possible precaution to prevent foreign matter from coming into contact with the low-pass filter during production and shipping. The D3, however, is designed to be used with interchangeable lenses, and foreign matter may enter the camera when lenses are removed or exchanged. Once inside the camera, this foreign matter may adhere to the low-pass filter, where it may appear in photographs taken under certain conditions. To protect the camera when no lens is in place, be sure to replace the body cap provided with the camera, being careful to first remove all dust and other foreign matter that may be adhering to the body cap.

Should foreign matter find its way onto the low-pass filter, clean the filter as described above, or have the filter cleaned by authorized Nikon service personnel. Photographs affected by the presence of foreign matter on the filter can be retouched using Capture NX (available separately; pg. 387) or the clean image options available in some third-party imaging applications.

☑ Servicing the Camera and Accessories

The camera is a precision device and requires regular servicing. Nikon recommends that the camera be inspected by the original retailer or Nikon service representative once every one to two years, and that it be serviced once every three to five years (note that fees apply to these services). Frequent inspection and servicing are particularly recommended if the camera is used professionally. Any accessories regularly used with the camera, such as lenses or optional Speedlights, should be included when the camera is inspected or serviced.

Caring for the Camera and Battery: Cautions

Do not drop: The product may malfunction if subjected to strong shocks or vibration.

Keep dry: This product is not waterproof, and may malfunction if immersed in water or exposed to high levels of humidity. Rusting of the internal mechanism can cause irreparable damage.

Avoid sudden changes in temperature: Sudden changes in temperature, such as occur when entering or leaving a heated building on a cold day, can cause condensation inside the device. To prevent condensation, place the device in a carrying case or plastic bag before exposing it to sudden changes in temperature.

Keep away from strong magnetic fields: Do not use or store this device in the vicinity of equipment that generates strong electromagnetic radiation or magnetic fields. Strong static charges or the magnetic fields produced by equipment such as radio transmitters could interfere with the monitor, damage data stored on the memory card, or affect the product's internal circuitry.

Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun: Do not leave the lens pointed at the sun or other strong light source for an extended period. Intense light may cause the image sensor to deteriorate or produce a white blur effect in photographs.

Cleaning: When cleaning the camera body, use a blower to gently remove dust and lint, then wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. After using the camera at the beach or seaside, wipe off any sand or salt using a cloth lightly dampened in pure water and then dry the camera thoroughly. In rare instances, static electricity may cause the LCD displays to light up or go dark. This does not indicate a malfunction, and the display will soon return to normal.

The lens and mirror are easily damaged. Dust and lint should be gently removed with a blower. When using an aerosol blower, keep the can vertical to prevent discharge of liquid. To remove fingerprints and other stains from the lens, apply a small amount of lens cleaner to a soft cloth and wipe the lens carefully.

See "The Low-Pass Filter" (pg. 395) for information on cleaning the low-pass filter.

Lens contacts: Keep the lens contacts clean.

Do not touch the shutter curtain: The shutter curtain is extremely thin and easily damaged. Under no circumstances should you exert pressure on the curtain, poke it with cleaning tools, or subject it to powerful air currents from a blower. These actions could scratch, deform, or tear the curtain.

The shutter curtain may appear to be unevenly colored, but this has no affect on pictures and does not indicate a malfunction.

Storage: To prevent mold or mildew, store the camera in a dry, well-ventilated area. If the product will not be used for an extended period, remove the battery to prevent leakage and store the camera in a plastic bag containing a desiccant. Do not, however, store the camera case in a plastic bag, as this may cause the material to deteriorate. Note that desiccant gradually loses its capacity to absorb moisture and should be replaced at regular intervals.

To prevent mold or mildew, take the camera out of storage at least once a month. Turn the camera on and release the shutter a few times before putting it away.

Store the battery in a cool, dry place. Replace the terminal cover before putting the battery away.

Turn the product off before removing or disconnecting the power source: Do not unplug the product or remove the battery while the product is on or while images are being recorded or deleted. Forcibly cutting power in these circumstances could result in loss of data or in damage to product memory or internal circuitry. To prevent an accidental interruption of power, avoid carrying the product from one location to another while the AC adapter is connected.

Dry the accessory shoe cover: If the camera is used in the rain, water may penetrate the supplied BS-2 accessory shoe cover. Remove and dry the accessory shoe cover after using the camera in the rain.

Notes on the monitor: The monitor may contain a few pixels that are always lit or that do not light. This is common to all TFT LCD monitors and does not indicate a malfunction. Images recorded with the product are unaffected.

Images in the monitor may be difficult to see in a bright light.

Do not apply pressure to the monitor, as this could cause damage or malfunction. Dust or lint on the monitor can be removed with a blower. Stains can be removed by wiping lightly with a soft cloth or chamois leather. Should the monitor break, care should be taken to avoid injury from broken glass and to prevent liquid crystal from the monitor touching the skin or entering the eyes and mouth.

Batteries: Dirt on the battery terminals can prevent the camera from functioning and should be removed with a soft, dry cloth before use.

Batteries may leak or explode if improperly handled. Observe the following precautions when handling batteries:

Turn the product off before replacing the battery.

The battery may become hot when used for extended periods. Observe due caution when handling the battery.

Use only batteries approved for use in this equipment.

Do not expose the battery to flame or excessive heat.

After removing the battery from the camera, be sure to replace the terminal cover.

Charge the battery before use. When taking photographs on important occasions, ready a spare EN-EL4a/EN-EL4 battery and keep it fully charged. Depending on your location, it may be difficult to purchase replacement batteries on short notice.

On cold days, the capacity of batteries tends to decrease. Be sure the battery is fully charged before taking photographs outside in cold weather. Keep a spare battery in a warm place and exchange the two as necessary. Once warmed, a cold battery may recover some of its charge.

Continuing to charge the battery after it is fully charged can impair battery performance.

Used batteries are a valuable resource. Please recycle used batteries in accord with local regulations.

Troubleshooting

If the camera fails to function as expected, check the list of common problems below before consulting your retailer or Nikon representative. Refer to the page numbers in the right-most column for more information.

■■ *Display*

Problem	Solution	Page
Viewfinder is out of focus.	Adjust viewfinder focus or use optional diopter adjustment lenses.	47
Viewfinder is dark.	Insert a fully-charged battery.	48
Displays turn off without warning.	Choose longer delays for Custom Setting c2 ([Auto meter-off delay]) or c4 ([Monitor off delay]).	317, 318
Unusual characters appear in control panels.	See "A Note on Electronically-Controlled Cameras," below.	402
Control panel or viewfinder displays are unresponsive and dim.	The response times and brightness of these displays varies with temperature.	—

A Note on Electronically-Controlled Cameras

In extremely rare instances, unusual characters may appear in the monitor or control panels and the camera may stop functioning. In most cases, this phenomenon is caused by a strong external static charge. Turn the camera off, remove and replace the battery, and turn the camera on again, or, if you are using an AC adapter (available separately), disconnect and reconnect the adapter and turn the camera on again. In the event of continued malfunction, contact your retailer or Nikon-authorized service representative. Note that disconnecting the power source as described above may result in loss of any data not recorded to the memory card at the time the problem occurred. Data already recorded to the card will not be affected.

■■ *Shooting*

Problem	Solution	Page
Camera takes time to turn on.	Delete files or folders.	—
Shutter-release disabled.	• Memory card is full or not inserted. • CPU lens with aperture ring attached but aperture not locked at highest f-number. If FE E is displayed in the top control panel, select [Aperture ring] for Custom Setting f7 ([Customize command dials]) > [Aperture setting] to use lens aperture ring to adjust aperture. • Exposure mode **S** selected with bulb selected for shutter speed.	42, 49 380 120
Photos are out of focus.	• Rotate focus-mode selector to **S** or **C**. • Camera unable to focus using autofocus: use manual focus or focus lock.	74 80, 83

Problem	Solution	Page
Full range of shutter speeds not available.	Flash in use. Flash sync speed can be selected using Custom Setting e1 ([Flash sync speed]); when using optional SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 Speedlight, choose [1/250 s (Auto FP)] for full range of shutter speeds.	325
Focus does not lock when shutter-release button is pressed halfway.	Camera is in focus mode **C**: use **AE-L/AF-L** button to lock focus.	81
Image size can not be changed.	[Image quality] set to [NEF (RAW)].	69
Can not select focus point	• Unlock focus selector lock. • Auto-area AF selected for focus mode: choose another mode. • The camera is in playback mode. • The camera is in menu operation. • Press shutter-release button halfway to turn monitor off or activate exposure meters.	78 76 227 277 50
Camera is slow to record photos.	Turn long exposure noise reduction off.	299
Photos not recorded in live view mode.	• Sound of mirror clicking down when shutter-release button was pressed halfway in hand-held mode was mistaken for sound of shutter. • Unless [Release] is chosen for Custom Setting a2 ([AF-S priority selection]), shutter release is disabled if camera is unable to focus when focus mode **S** is selected in hand-held mode.	96 96, 305

Problem	Solution	Page
Randomly-spaced bright pixels ("noise") appear in photos.	• Choose lower ISO sensitivity or turn high ISO noise reduction on. • Shutter speed is slower than 1 s: use long exposure noise reduction.	108, 299 299
Photos are blotched or smeared.	• Clean lens. • Clean low-pass filter.	— 395
Colors are unnatural.	• Adjust white balance to match light source. • Adjust [Set Picture Control] settings.	144 166
Can not measure white balance.	Subject is too dark or too bright.	156
Image can not be selected as source for preset white balance.	Image was not created with D3.	159
White balance bracketing unavailable.	• NEF (RAW) or NEF+JPEG image quality option selected for image quality. • Multiple exposure mode is in effect.	65 211

Problem	Solution	Page
Effects of Picture Control differ from image to image.	"A" (auto) is selected for sharpening, contrast, or saturation. For consistent results over a series of photographs, choose a setting other than "A" (auto).	172
Metering can not be changed.	Autoexposure lock is in effect.	131
Exposure compensation can not be used.	Choose exposure mode P, S, or A.	132
Reddish areas appear in photos.	Reddish areas and uneven textures may appear in long time-exposures. Turn long exposure noise reduction on when shooting at shutter speeds of "bulb".	299
Textures are uneven.		

■■ *Playback*

Problem	Solution	Page
Flashing areas appear in images	Press ▲ or ▼ to choose photo information displayed.	231, 282
Shooting data appear on images		
A graph appears during playback.		
NEF (RAW) image is not played back.	Photo was taken at image quality of NEF + JPEG.	66
Some photos are not displayed during playback.	Select [All] for [Playback folder].	281
"Tall" (portrait) orientation photos are displayed in "wide" (landscape) orientation.	• Select [On] for [Rotate tall]. • Photo was taken with [Off] selected for [Auto image rotation]. • Camera was pointed up or down when photo was taken.	287 349 349
Can not delete photo.	Photo is protected: remove protection.	244
Message is displayed stating that no images are available for playback.	Select [All] for [Playback folder].	281
Can not change print order.	Memory card is full: delete photos.	49
Can not select photo for printing.	Photo is in NEF (RAW) format. Transfer to computer and print using supplied software or Capture NX.	262
Can not print photos.	• Set [USB] to [MTP/PTP]. • NEF (RAW) and TIFF photos can not be printed by direct USB connection. Use DPOF print service (TIFF images only) or transfer to computer and print using supplied software or Capture NX.	350 262
Photo is not displayed on TV.	Choose correct video mode.	346

Problem	Solution	Page
Photo is not displayed on high-definition video device.	Confirm that HDMI cable (available separately) is connected.	276
Can not copy photos to computer.	Choose correct [USB] option.	257
Photos not displayed in Capture NX.	Update software to latest version.	387
Can not use Camera Control Pro 2.	Set [USB] to [MTP/PTP].	257

■■ *Miscellaneous*

Problem	Solution	Page
Date of recording is not correct.	Set camera clock.	39
Menu item can not be selected.	Some options are not available at certain combinations of settings. Note that [Battery info] option is not available when camera is powered by optional EH-6 AC adapter.	353

Error Messages

This section lists the indicators and error messages that appear in the viewfinder, top control panel, and monitor.

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Control panel	Viewfinder			
FE E (blinks)		Lens aperture ring is not set to minimum aperture.	Set ring to minimum aperture (largest f-number).	38
		Low battery.	Ready a fully-charged spare battery.	48
(blinks)	(blinks)	Battery exhausted.	Replace battery.	32, 34
(blinks)	(blinks)	Battery can not be used.	Contact Nikon-authorized service representative.	—
CLOCK (blinks)	—	Camera clock is not set.	Set camera clock.	39
F		No lens attached, or non-CPU lens attached without specifying maximum aperture. Aperture shown in stops from maximum aperture.	Aperture value will be displayed if maximum aperture is specified.	220
—	▶ ◀ (blinks)	Camera unable to focus using autofocus.	Focus manually.	83

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Control panel	Viewfinder			
H i		Subject too bright; photo will be overexposed.	• Use a lower ISO sensitivity. • Use optional ND filter. In exposure mode: S Increase shutter speed A Choose a smaller aperture (larger f-number)	108 386 120 122

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Control panel	Viewfinder			
Lo		Subject too dark; photo will be underexposed.	• Use a higher ISO sensitivity. • Use optional flash. In exposure mode: S Lower shutter speed A Choose a larger aperture (smaller f-number)	108 191 120 122
bwLb (blinks)		bwLb selected in exposure mode S.	Change shutter speed or select manual exposure mode.	120, 124
(blinks)	ϟ (blinks)	Optional flash unit that does not support i-TTL flash control attached and set to TTL.	Change flash mode setting on optional flash unit.	194
—	ϟ (blinks)	If indicator blinks for 3s after flash fires, photo may be underexposed.	Check photo in monitor; if underexposed, adjust settings and try again.	194

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Control panel	Viewfinder			
⊙ (blinks)	—	Flash unit that does not support red-eye reduction attached and flash sync mode set to red-eye reduction.	Change flash sync mode or use flash unit that supports red-eye reduction.	192
0 (blinks)	Cd (blinks)	Memory insufficient to record further photos at current settings, or camera has run out of file or folder numbers.	• Reduce quality or size. • Delete photographs. • Insert new memory card.	65, 69 281 42
Err (blinks)		Camera malfunction.	Release shutter. If error persists or appears frequently, consult Nikon-authorized service representative.	—

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Monitor	**Control panel**			
No memory card.	[- E -]	Camera cannot detect memory card.	Turn camera off and confirm that card is correctly inserted.	42
This memory card cannot be used. Card may be damaged. Insert another card.	[CHA] (blinks)	• Error accessing memory card.	• Use Nikon-approved card. • Check that contacts are clean. If card is damaged, contact retailer or Nikon representative.	389 —
		• Unable to create new folder.	• Delete files or insert new memory card.	42, 281

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Monitor	Control panel			
This card is not formatted. Format the card.	For (blinks)	Memory card has not been formatted for use in camera.	Format memory card or insert new memory card.	42, 45
Folder contains no images.	—	No images on memory card or in folder(s) selected for playback.	Select folder containing images from [Playback folder] menu or insert different memory card.	42, 281
All images are hidden.	—	All photos in current folder are hidden.	No images can be played back until another folder has been selected or [Hide image] used to allow at least one image to be displayed.	281
File does not contain image data.	—	File has been created or modified using a computer or different make of camera, or file is corrupt.	File can not be played back on camera.	—

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Monitor	Control panel			
Cannot select this file	—	Memory card does not contain images that can be retouched.	Images created with other devices can not be retouched.	361
Check printer.	—	Printer error.	Check printer. To resume, select [Continue] (if available).	263 *
Check paper.	—	Paper in printer is not of selected size.	Insert paper of correct size and select [Continue].	263 *
Paper jam.	—	Paper is jammed in printer.	Clear jam and select [Continue].	263 *
Out of paper.	—	Printer is out of paper.	Insert paper of selected size and select [Continue].	263 *

Indicator		Problem	Solution	Page
Monitor	Control panel			
Check ink supply.	—	Ink error.	Check ink. To resume, select [Continue].	263 *
Out of ink.	—	Printer is out of ink.	Replace ink and select [Continue].	263 *

* See printer manual for more information.

Appendix

The Appendix covers the following topics:

- Defaults ..... pg. 418
- Memory Card Capacity ..... pg. 423
- Exposure Program ..... pg. 426

Defaults

The following defaults are restored either with a two-button reset or using [Reset shooting menu] or [Reset custom settings].

■■ *Defaults Restored with a Two-Button Reset (pg. 206)* [1]

	Option	Default
Shooting menu [2]	[ISO sensitivity] (pg. 108)	200
	[Image quality] (pg. 65)	JPEG normal
	[Image size] (pg. 69)	L
	[White balance] (pg. 144)	Auto
	Fine tuning (pg. 147)	Off
	[Choose color temp.] (pg. 151)	5000 K
Other settings	Focus point (pg. 78)	Center
	Exposure mode (pg. 116)	Programmed auto
	Flexible program (pg. 119)	Off
	Shutter speed and aperture lock (pg. 127)	Off
	AE lock hold (pg. 129)	Off
	Exposure compensation (pg. 132)	Off
	Bracketing (pg. 134)	Off
	Flash mode (pg. 197)	Front-curtain sync
	FV lock (pg. 201)	Off
	Multiple exposure (pg. 208)	Off

1 If the current Picture Control has been modified, existing settings for the Picture Control will also be restored.

2 Only the settings in the bank currently selected using the [Shooting menu bank] option will be reset (pg. 291). Settings in all other banks are unaffected.

■■ *Defaults Restored with [Reset Shooting Menu] (pg. 293)* [1]

Option	Default
[File naming] (pg. 296)	DSC
[Slot 2] (pg. 71)	Overflow
[Image quality] (pg. 65)	JPEG normal
[Image size] (pg. 69)	Large
[Image area] (pg. 60)	
[Auto DX crop] (pg. 60)	On
[Choose image area] (pg. 61)	FX format (36 × 24)
[JPEG compression] (pg. 67)	Size priority
[NEF (RAW) recording] (pg. 68)	
[Type] (pg. 68)	Lossless compressed
[NEF (RAW) bit depth] (pg. 68)	12-bit
[White balance] (pg. 144)	Auto
Fine tuning (pg. 147)	Off
[Choose color temp.] (pg. 151)	5000K
[Set Picture Control] (pg. 166)	Standard
[Color space] (pg. 187)	sRGB
[Active D-Lighting] (pg. 185)	Off
[Long exp. NR] (pg. 299)	Off
[High ISO NR] (pg. 299)	Normal
[ISO sensitivity settings] (pg. 108)	
[ISO sensitivity] (pg. 108)	200
[ISO sensitivity auto control] (pg. 110)	Off
[Live view] (pg. 90)	
[Live view mode] (pg. 91)	Hand-held
[Release mode] (pg. 92)	Single frame
[Multiple exposure] (pg. 208)	Reset [2]
[Interval timer shooting] (pg. 213)	Reset [3]

1 With the exception of [Multiple exposure] and [Interval timer shooting], only settings in the current shooting menu bank will be reset.

2 Applies to all banks. [Reset shooting menu] can not be selected while shooting is in progress.

3 Applies to all banks. Shooting ends when reset is performed.

■■ *Defaults Restored with [Reset Custom Settings] (pg. 303)* *

	Option	Default
a1	[AF-C priority selection] (pg. 304)	Release
a2	[AF-S priority selection] (pg. 305)	Focus
a3	[Dynamic AF area] (pg. 306)	9 points
a4	[Focus tracking with lock-on] (pg. 308)	Normal
a5	[AF activation] (pg. 308)	Shutter/AF-ON
a6	[Focus point illumination] (pg. 309)	
	[Manual focus mode]	On
	[Continuous mode]	On
a7	[Focus point wrap-around] (pg. 310)	No wrap
a8	[AF point selection] (pg. 310)	51 points
a9	[AF-ON button] (pg. 311)	AF-ON
a10	[Vertical AF-ON button] (pg. 312)	AF-ON
b1	[ISO sensitivity step value] (pg. 313)	1/3 step
b2	[EV steps for exposure cntrl.] (pg. 313)	1/3 step
b3	[EV steps for exposure comp.] (pg. 313)	1/3 step
b4	[Easy exposure compensation] (pg. 314)	Off
b5	[Center-weighted area] (pg. 315)	Ø 12 mm
b6	[Fine tune optimal exposure] (pg. 315)	
	[Matrix metering]	0
	[Center-weighted]	0
	[Spot metering]	0
c1	[Shutter-release button AE-L] (pg. 317)	Off
c2	[Auto meter-off delay] (pg. 317)	6 s
c3	[Self-timer delay] (pg. 318)	10 s
c4	[Monitor off delay] (pg. 318)	20 s

* Only the settings in the bank currently selected using the [Custom settings bank] option will be reset (pg. 303). Settings in all other banks are unaffected.

	Option	Default
d1	[Beep] (pg. 319)	Off
d2	[Shooting speed] (pg. 320)	
	[Continuous high-speed]	9 fps
	[Continuous low-speed]	5 fps
d3	[Max. continuous release] (pg. 320)	130
d4	[File number sequence] (pg. 321)	On
d5	[Control panel/viewfinder] (pg. 322)	
	[Rear control panel]	ISO sensitivity
	[Viewfinder display]	Frame count
d6	[Shooting info display] (pg. 323)	Auto
d7	[LCD illumination] (pg. 324)	Off
d8	[Exposure delay mode] (pg. 324)	Off
e1	[Flash sync speed] (pg. 325)	1/250 s
e2	[Flash shutter speed] (pg. 326)	1/60 s
e3	[Modeling flash] (pg. 326)	On
e4	[Auto bracketing set] (pg. 327)	AE & flash
e5	[Auto bracketing (Mode M)] (pg. 328)	Flash/speed
e6	[Bracketing order] (pg. 329)	MTR > under > over

	Option	Default
f1	[Multi selector center button] (pg. 330)	
	[Shooting mode]	Select center focus point
	[Playback mode]	Thumbnail on/off
f2	[Multi selector] (pg. 331)	Do nothing
f3	[Photo info/playback] (pg. 331)	Info ⊛/Playback ⊛
f4	[Assign FUNC. button] (pg. 331)	
	[FUNC. button press]	None
	[FUNC. button+dials]	Choose image area
f5	[Assign preview button] (pg. 337)	
	[Preview button press]	Preview
	[Preview+command dials]	None
f6	[Assign AE-L/AF-L button] (pg. 338)	
	[AE-L/AF-L button press]	AE/AF lock
	[AE-L/AF-L+command dials]	None
f7	[Customize command dials] (pg. 339)	
	[Reverse rotation] (pg. 339)	No
	[Change main/sub] (pg. 339)	Off
	[Aperture setting] (pg. 340)	Sub-command dial
	[Menus and playback] (pg. 340)	Off
f8	[Release button to use dial] (pg. 341)	No
f9	[No memory card?] (pg. 342)	Enable release
f10	[Reverse indicators] (pg. 343)	

Memory Card Capacity

The following table shows the approximate number of pictures that can be stored on a 2 GB SanDisk Extreme IV (SDCFX4) card at different image quality, image size, and image area settings.

■■ *FX format (36 × 24) Image Area*

Image quality	Image size	File size [1]	No. of images [1]	Buffer capacity [2]
NEF (RAW), Lossless compressed, 12-bit	—	13.3 MB	100	18
NEF (RAW), Lossless compressed, 14-bit	—	16.3 MB	77	16
NEF (RAW), Compressed, 12-bit	—	11.0 MB	138	20
NEF (RAW), Compressed, 14-bit	—	13.8 MB	114	16
NEF (RAW), Uncompressed, 12-bit	—	18.8 MB	100	17
NEF (RAW), Uncompressed, 14-bit	—	24.7 MB	77	16
TIFF (RGB)	L	35.9 MB	53	17
	M	20.7 MB	95	19
	S	10.0 MB	211	25
JPEG fine [3]	L	5.7 MB	279	52
	M	3.2MB	496	92
	S	1.4 MB	1000	96
JPEG normal [3]	L	2.9 MB	548	74
	M	1.6 MB	976	98
	S	0.7 MB	2000	100
JPEG basic [3]	L	1.4 MB	1000	79
	M	0.8 MB	1800	100
	S	0.4 MB	3900	100

■■ DX Format (24 × 16) Image Area

Image quality	Image size	File size [1]	No. of images [1]	Buffer capacity [2]
NEF (RAW), Lossless compressed, 12-bit	—	5.7 MB	229	28
NEF (RAW), Lossless compressed, 14-bit	—	7.0 MB	177	25
NEF (RAW), Compressed, 12-bit	—	4.7 MB	312	36
NEF (RAW), Compressed, 14-bit	—	6.0 MB	260	29
NEF (RAW), Uncompressed, 12-bit	—	8.1 MB	229	25
NEF (RAW), Uncompressed, 14-bit	—	10.7 MB	177	22
TIFF (RGB)	L	15.3 MB	124	20
	M	8.8 MB	220	25
	S	4.3 MB	480	41
JPEG fine [3]	L	2.5 MB	637	130
	M	1.4 MB	1100	130
	S	0.6 MB	2400	130
JPEG normal [3]	L	1.2 MB	1200	130
	M	0.7 MB	2000	130
	S	0.3 MB	4400	130
JPEG basic [3]	L	0.6 MB	2400	130
	M	0.3 MB	3900	130
	S	0.2 MB	7800	130

1 All figures are approximate. File size varies with scene recorded.
2 Maximum number of exposures that can be stored in memory buffer. Drops if [Optimal quality] is selected for [JPEG compression], ISO sensitivity is set to H 0.3 or higher, [High ISO NR] is on when auto ISO sensitivity control is on or ISO sensitivity is set to 2000 or higher, or long exposure noise reduction, active D-Lighting or image authentication is on.
3 Figures assume [JPEG compression] is set to [Size priority]. Selecting [Optimal quality] increases the file size of JPEG images; number of images and buffer capacity drop accordingly.

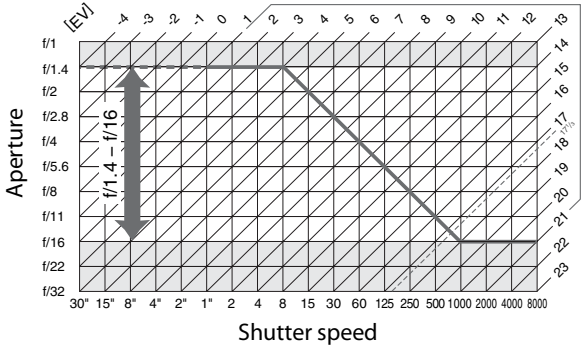
d3—Max. Continuous Release (pg. 320)

The maximum number of photographs that can be taken in a single burst can be set to any amount between 1 and 130.

Exposure Program

The exposure program for programmed auto is shown in the following graph:

——— ISO 200; lens with maximum aperture of f/1.4 and minimum aperture of f/16 (e.g., AF 50mm f/1.4 D)



The maximum and minimum values for EV vary with ISO sensitivity; the above graph assumes an ISO sensitivity of ISO 200 equivalent. When matrix metering is used, values over 17 1/3 EV are reduced to 17 1/3 EV.

Specifications

■■ *Nikon D3 Digital Camera*

Type	
Type	Single-lens reflex digital camera
Lens mount	Nikon F mount (with AF coupling and AF contacts)
Effective pixels	
Effective pixels	12.1 million
Image sensor	
Image sensor	36 × 23.9 mm CMOS sensor (Nikon FX format)
Total pixels	12.87 million
Dust-reduction System	Image Dust Off reference data (optional Capture NX software required)
Storage	
Image size (pixels)	• **FX format (36 × 24) image area** 4,256 × 2,832 (L) 3,184 × 2,120 (M) 2,128 × 1,416 (S) • **DX format (24 × 16) image area** 2,784 × 1,848 (L) 2,080 × 1,384 (M) 1,392 × 920 (S) • **5 : 4 (30 × 24) image area** 3,552 × 2,832 (L) 2,656 × 2,120 (M) 1,776 × 1,416 (S)
File format	• **NEF (RAW)**: 12 or 14 bit, lossless compressed, compressed, or uncompressed • **TIFF (RGB)** • **JPEG**: JPEG-Baseline compliant with fine (approx. 1 : 4), normal (approx. 1 : 8), or basic (approx. 1 : 16) compression ([Size priority]); [Optimal quality] compression available • **NEF (RAW)+JPEG**: Single photograph recorded in both NEF (RAW) and JPEG formats
Picture Control System	Can be selected from Standard, Neutral, Vivid, Monochrome; storage for up to nine custom Picture Controls
Media	Type I and II CompactFlash memory cards (UDMA compliant); microdrives

Storage	
Double slot	Slot 2 can be used for overflow or backup storage or for separate storage of NEF (RAW) and JPEG images
File system	DCF (**D**esign Rule for **C**amera **F**ile System) 2.0, DPOF (**D**igital **P**rint **O**rder **F**ormat), Exif 2.21 (**Ex**changeable **I**mage **F**ile Format for Digital Still Cameras), PictBridge

Viewfinder	
Viewfinder	Eye-level pentaprism single-lens reflex viewfinder
Frame coverage	Approx. 100% horizontal and 100% vertical
Magnification	Approx. 0.7 × (50-mm f/1.4 lens at infinity, –1.0 m^{-1})
Eyepoint	18 mm (–1.0 m^{-1})
Diopter adjustment	–3–+1 m^{-1}
Focusing screen	Ships with type B BriteView Clear Matte VI screen
Reflex mirror	Quick return
Depth-of-field preview	When depth of field preview button is pressed, lens aperture is stopped down to value selected by user (A and M modes) or by camera (P and S modes)
Lens aperture	Instant return, electronically controlled

Lens	
Compatible lenses	• **DX AF Nikkor**: All functions supported • **Type G or D AF Nikkor**: All functions supported (PC Micro-Nikkor does not support some functions). IX Nikkor lenses not supported. • **Other AF Nikkor**: All functions supported except 3D color matrix metering II. Lenses for F3AF not supported. • **AI-P Nikkor**: All functions supported except 3D color matrix metering II • **Non-CPU**: Can be used in exposure modes A and M; electronic rangefinder can be used if maximum aperture is f/5.6 or faster; color matrix metering and aperture value display supported if user provides lens data (AI lenses only)

Shutter	
Type	Electronically-controlled vertical-travel focal-plane shutter
Speed	1/8000 – 30 s in steps of 1/3, 1/2, or 1 EV, bulb, X250
Flash sync speed	X = 1/250 s; synchronizes with shutter at 1/250 s or slower
Release	
Release mode	**S** (single frame), **CL** (continuous low speed), **CH** (continuous high speed), LV (live view), ⏲ (self-timer), **MUP** (mirror up)
Frame advance rate	• **DX format (24 × 16)**: Up to 9 fps (**CL**) or 9–11 fps (**CH**) • **Other image areas**: Up to 9 fps
Self-timer	Can be selected from 2, 5, 10, and 20 s duration
Exposure	
Metering	TTL exposure metering using 1,005-segment RGB sensor
Metering method	• **Matrix**: 3D color matrix metering II (type G and D lenses); color matrix metering II (other CPU lenses); color matrix metering available with non-CPU lenses if user provides lens data • **Center-weighted**: Weight of 75% given to 8, 12, 15, or 20-mm circle in center of frame, or weighting based on average of entire frame (non-CPU lenses use 12-mm circle or average of entire frame) • **Spot**: Meters 4-mm circle (about 1.5% of frame) centered on selected focus point (on center focus point when non-CPU lens is used)
Range (ISO 100, f/1.4 lens, 20 °C/68 °F)	• **Matrix or center-weighted metering**: 0 – 20 EV • **Spot metering**: 2 – 20 EV
Exposure meter coupling	Combined CPU and AI
Exposure mode	Programmed auto with flexible program (**P**); shutter-priority auto (**S**); aperture priority auto (**A**); manual (**M**)
Exposure compensation	–5 – +5 EV in increments of 1/3, 1/2, or 1 EV
Exposure bracketing	2 – 9 frames in steps of 1/3, 1/2, 2/3, or 1 EV
Flash bracketing	2 – 9 frames in steps of 1/3, 1/2, 2/3, or 1 EV
White balance bracketing	2 – 9 frames in steps of 1, 2, or 3

Exposure	
Exposure lock	Luminosity locked at detected value with **AE-L/AF-L** button
ISO sensitivity (Recommended Exposure Index)	ISO 200 – 6400 in steps of 1/3, 1/2, or 1 EV. Can also be set to approx. 0.3, 0.5, 0.7, or 1 EV (ISO 100 equivalent) below ISO 200 or to approx. 0.3, 0.5, 0.7, 1 (ISO 12800 equivalent), or 2 EV (ISO 25600 equivalent) above ISO 6400.
Active D-Lighting	Can be selected from [High], [Normal], or [Low]

Focus	
Autofocus	Nikon Multi-CAM 3500FX autofocus module with TTL phase detection, fine-tuning, 51 focus points (including 15 cross-type sensors)
Detection range	–1 – +19 EV (ISO 100, 20 °C/68 °F)
Lens servo	• **Autofocus**: Single-servo AF (**S**); continuous-servo AF (**C**); predictive focus tracking automatically activated according to subject status • **Manual** (**M**): Electronic range finding supported
Focus point	Can be selected from 51 or 11 focus points
AF-area mode	Single-point AF, dynamic-area AF, automatic-area AF
Focus lock	Focus can be locked by pressing shutter-release button halfway (single-servo AF) or by pressing **AE-L/AF-L** button

Flash	
Flash control	• **TTL**: i-TTL balanced fill-flash and standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR using combined 1,005-segment RGB sensor are available with SB-800, SB-600, or SB-400 • **Auto aperture**: Available with SB-800 and CPU lens • **Non-TTL auto**: Supported flash units include SB-800, SB-28, SB-27, and SB-22s • **Range-priority manual**: Available with SB-800
Flash mode	Front curtain sync, slow sync, rear-curtain sync, red-eye reduction, red-eye reduction with slow sync
Flash-ready indicator	Lights when Speedlight such as SB-800, SB-600, SB-400, SB-80DX, SB-28DX, or SB-50DX is fully charged; blinks after flash is fired at full output

Flash	
Accessory shoe	Standard ISO 518 hot-shoe contact with safety lock
Nikon Creative Lighting System (CLS)	Advanced Wireless Lighting supported with SB-800, or SU-800 as commander and SB-800, SB-600, or SB-R200 as remotes; Auto FP High-Speed Sync and modeling illumination supported with all CLS-compatible flash units except SB-400; Flash Color Information Communication and FV lock supported with all CLS-compatible flash units
White balance	
White balance	Auto (TTL white-balance with main image sensor and 1,005 segment RGB sensor); 7 manual modes with fine-tuning; color temperature setting
Live view	
Modes	Hand-held, tripod
Autofocus	• **Hand-held**: Phase-detection AF with 51 focus points (including 15 cross-type sensors) • **Tripod**: Contrast-detect AF anywhere in frame
Monitor	
Monitor	3-in., 920,000-dot (VGA), low-temperature polysilicon TFT LCD with 170 ° viewing angle, 100% frame coverage, and brightness adjustment
Playback	
Playback	Full-frame and thumbnail (four or nine images) playback with playback zoom, slide show, histogram display, highlight display, auto image rotation, image comment (up to 36 characters), and voice memo input and playback
Interface	
USB	Hi-Speed USB
Video output	Can be selected from NTSC and PAL
HDMI output	Version 1.3a with type A HDMI connector; camera monitor turns off when HDMI cable is connected

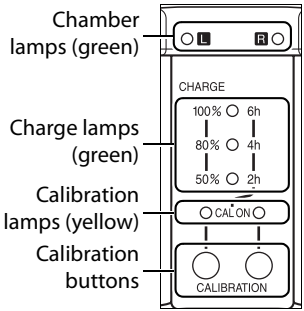
Interface	
Ten-pin remote terminal	Can be used to connect remote control or GPS device compliant with NMEA0183 version 2.01 or 3.01 (requires optional MC-35 GPS adapter cord and cable with D-sub 9-pin connector)
Supported languages	
Supported languages	Chinese (Simplified and Traditional), Dutch, English, Finnish, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish
Power source	
Battery	One rechargeable Li-ion EN-EL4a battery
AC adapter	EH-6 AC adapter (available separately)
Tripod socket	
Tripod socket	1/4 in. (ISO 1222)
Dimensions/weight	
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approx. 159.5 × 157 × 87.5 mm (6.3 × 6.2 × 3.4 in.)
Weight	Approx. 1240 g (2.7 lb) without battery, memory card, body cap, or accessory shoe cover
Operating environment	
Temperature	0–40 °C (32–104 °F)
Humidity	Less than 85% (no condensation)

- Unless otherwise stated, all figures are for a camera with a fully-charged battery operating at an ambient temperature of 20 °C (68 °F).
- Nikon reserves the right to change the specifications of the hardware and software described in this manual at any time and without prior notice. Nikon will not be held liable for damages that may result from any mistakes that this manual may contain.

Calibrating Batteries

The MH-22 quick charger is equipped with a battery calibration feature. Calibrate the battery as required to ensure the accuracy of the camera and charger battery level displays.

If the calibration lamp for the current battery chamber blinks when a battery is inserted, the battery needs to be calibrated. To begin calibration, press the calibration button for the current chamber for about a second. The time needed to calibrate the battery is shown by the charge and calibration lamps:



Approximate time needed to recalibrate battery	Calibration lamp	Charge lamps		
		2 h	4 h	6 h
Over 6 hours	○ (glows)	○ (glows)	○ (glows)	○ (glows)
4 – 6 hours	○ (glows)	○ (glows)	○ (glows)	● (off)
2 – 4 hours	○ (glows)	○ (glows)	● (off)	● (off)
Under 2 hours	○ (glows)	● (off)	● (off)	● (off)

When calibration is complete, the calibration and charge lamps will turn off and charging will begin immediately.

Although calibration is recommended for accurate measurement of battery charge state, calibration need not be performed when the calibration lamp blinks. Once begun, calibration can be interrupted as desired.

- If the calibration button is not pressed while the calibration lamp is blinking, normal charging will begin after about ten seconds.
- To interrupt calibration, press the calibration button again. Calibration will end and charging will begin.

Battery Warning

If the chamber and calibration lamps flash on and off in sequence when no battery is inserted, there is a problem with the charger. If the chamber and calibration lamps flash on and off in sequence when a battery is inserted, a problem has occurred with the battery or charger during charging. Remove the battery, unplug the charger, and take the battery and charger to a Nikon-authorized service representative for inspection.

Charging and Calibrating Two Batteries

The MH-22 charges only one battery at a time. If batteries are inserted in both chambers, they will be charged in the order inserted. If the calibration button for the first battery is pressed, the second battery can not be calibrated or charged until calibration and charging of the first battery are complete.

MH-22 quick charger	
Rated input	AC 100–240 V (50/60 Hz)
Rated output	DC 12.6 V/1,200 mA
Supported batteries	Nikon EN-EL4a/EN-EL4 rechargeable Li-ion batteries
Charging time per battery	Approx. 2 hours and 25 minutes (EN-EL4a) or 1 hour and 40 minutes (EN-EL4) when battery is fully discharged
Operating temperature	0–40 °C (+32–104 °F)
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approx. 160 × 85 × 50.5 mm (6.3 × 3.3 × 2.0 in.)
Length of cord	Approx. 1800 mm (5 ft. 11 in.)
Weight	Approx. 260 g (9.1 oz.), excluding power cable

EN-EL4a rechargeable Li-ion battery	
Type	Rechargeable lithium-ion battery
Rated capacity	11.1 V/2,500 mAh
Dimensions (W × H × D)	Approx. 56.5 × 27 × 82.5 mm (2.2 × 1.1 × 3.2 in.)
Weight	Approx. 180 g (6.3 oz.), excluding terminal cover

Supported Standards

- **DCF Version 2.0**: The **D**esign Rule for **C**amera **F**ile System (DCF) is a standard widely used in the digital camera industry to ensure compatibility among different makes of camera.
- **DPOF**: **D**igital **P**rint **O**rder **F**ormat (DPOF) is an industry-wide standard that allows pictures to be printed from print orders stored on the memory card.
- **Exif version 2.21**: The camera supports Exif (**Ex**changeable **I**mage **F**ile Format for Digital Still Cameras) version 2.21, a standard in which information stored with photographs is used for optimal color reproduction when the images are output on Exif-compliant printers.
- **PictBridge**: A standard developed through cooperation with the digital camera and printer industries, allowing photographs to be output directly to a printer without first transferring them to a computer.
- **HDMI**: **H**igh-**D**efinition **M**ultimedia **I**nterface is a standard for multimedia interfaces used in consumer electronics and AV devices capable of transmitting audiovisual data and control signals to HDMI-compliant devices via a single cable connection (the camera uses a type A connector).

Battery Life

The number of shots that can be taken with a fully-charged EN-EL4a battery (2,500 mAh) varies with the condition of the battery, temperature, and how the camera is used. Sample figures are given below.

- **CIPA standard**: Approximately 4,300 shots. Measured at 23 °C/73.4 °F (±2 °C/3.6 °F) with an AF-S NIKKOR 24–70mm f/2.8G ED lens under the following test conditions: lens cycled from infinity to minimum range and one photograph taken at default settings once every 30 s. Live view not used.
- **Nikon standard**: Approximately 4,700 shots. Measured at 20 °C/68 °F with an AF-S VR 70–200mm f/2.8 ED lens under the following test conditions: image quality set to JPEG normal, image size set to **L** (large), shutter speed 1/250 s, shutter-release button pressed halfway for three seconds and focus cycled from infinity to minimum range three times; six shots are then taken in succession and monitor turned on for five seconds and then turned off; cycle repeated once exposure meters have turned off.

The following can reduce battery life:

- Using the monitor
- Keeping the shutter-release button pressed halfway
- Repeated autofocus operations
- Taking NEF (RAW) or TIFF (RGB) photographs
- Slow shutter speeds
- Using the optional WT-4 wireless transmitter
- Using VR (vibration reduction) mode with VR lenses

To ensure that you get the most from rechargeable Nikon EN-EL4a batteries:

- Keep the battery contacts clean. Soiled contacts can reduce battery performance.
- Use batteries immediately after charging. Batteries will lose their charge if left unused.
- Check the condition of the battery regularly using the [Battery info] option in the setup menu (pg. 353). If calibration is recommended, calibrate the battery using the MH-22 quick charger.

Index

Menu items and options in the camera monitor are shown in brackets ([ ]).

Symbols
[·] (Single-point AF), 76, 77
[··] (Dynamic-area AF), 76, 77
[▣] (Auto-area AF), 76, 77
S, 86
CL, 86, 88, 320
CH, 86, 88, 320
[Lv], 90
⏲ (Self-timer), 103
MUP, 105
[▦] (Matrix), 114, 316
[◉] (Center-weighted), 114, 315, 316
[·] (Spot), 114, 316
P (Programmed auto), 118
S (Shutter-priority auto), 120
A (Aperture-priority auto), 122
M (Manual), 124
? (Help), 31
(Memory buffer), 55, 89, 423
PRE (Preset manual), 145, 152

Numerics
1,005-segment RGB sensor, 144, 196
3D color matrix metering II, 114
3D-tracking, 307

A
A/V, 4, 274
  cable, i, 274
AC adapter, 383
Accessories, 383
[Active D-Lighting], 185
[Active folder], 293
AE-L, 81, 129, 338
AF, 74, 304
[AF activation], 308
AF assist, 195
[AF fine tune], 358
[AF point selection], 310
AF-area brackets, 47, 95
AF-area mode, 76
  auto-area AF, 76, 77
  dynamic-area AF, 76, 77, 307
  single-point AF, 76, 77
[AF-C priority selection], 304
[AF-ON button], 311
AF-ON button, 75, 97, 311
AF-ON button for vertical shooting, 75, 312
[AF-S priority selection], 305
[After delete], 287
A-M switch, 37
Amber, 148, 367
Aperture, 38, 116, 122, 128
  lock, 128
  maximum, 84, 220
  minimum, 116, 426
Aperture-priority auto, 122
[Assign AE-L/AF-L button], 338
[Assign FUNC. button], 331
[Assign preview button], 337
Audio, 254, 288, 289, 350
[Audio output], 254, 350
Auto bracketing, 134, 327, 328
[Auto bracketing (Mode M)], 328
[Auto bracketing set], 327
  [AE & flash], 327
  [AE only], 327
  [Flash only], 327
  [WB bracketing], 327
Auto FP high-speed sync, 190, 197, 325
[Auto image rotation], 349
Auto meter off, 317
[Auto meter-off delay], 317
Auto-area AF, 76, 77
Autofocus, 74, 76, 78, 80, 82, 304–312

B
Backlight, 10, 324

Battery, xviii–xix, 32–36, 401
[Battery info], 353
[Beep], 319
Body cap, 4, 37, 387
Bracketing, 134, 327, 328
  exposure, 134, 327
  flash, 134, 327
  white balance, 134, 139, 327
[Bracketing order], 329
Bulb, 126
Burst, 89, 320, 332

C
C, 74, 304
Calibrating, 433
  calibration, 353, 433
  charging, 32
  info, 353
Camera Control Pro 2, 256, 387
Center-weighted, 114, 315, 316
[Center-weighted area], 315
Clock, 40, 41
CLS, 190
[Color balance], 367
[Color space], 187
  [Adobe RGB], 187
  [sRGB], 187
Color space, 187, 240
Color temperature, 144, 146, 151
CompactFlash, 42
Computer, 256
Control panel, 8–11
[Control panel/viewfinder], 322
[Copy image(s)], 283
Copying images, 283
CPU contacts, 380
CPU lens, 38, 380
Creative Lighting System, 190
Crop, 267, 365
[Custom setting bank], 303
Custom Settings, 301
Custom Settings Menu, 301
[Customize command dials], 339

D
Date and time, 40, 347
Daylight saving time, 40, 347
DCF version 2.0, 436
Default settings, 206, 418
  restoring, 206
[Delete], 281
  [All], 281
  [Selected], 281
Delete, 58, 245, 281
  all images, 281
  current image, 245
  selected images, 281
Digital Print Order Format, 262, 436
Diopter, 3, 47, 385
  adjustment control, 47
  adjustment lens, 385
[Display mode], 282
[D-Lighting], 363
DPOF, 262
[Dust off ref photo], 351
[Dynamic AF area], 306
  [51 points (3D-tracking)], 307
Dynamic-area AF, 76, 77, 307

E
[Easy exposure compensation], 314
Electronic analog exposure display, 124, 126, 132
Ethernet, 261, 383
[EV steps for exposure cntrl.], 313
[EV steps for exposure comp.], 313
Exif version 2.21, 436
Exposure, 113, 116, 129, 132, 134
  bracketing, 134
  lock, 129
  meters, 50, 317
  mode, 116
    aperture-priority auto, 122
    manual, 124
    programmed auto, 118
    shutter-priority auto, 120
Exposure bracketing, 134
Exposure compensation, 132
[Exposure delay mode], 324

Exposure preview, 99, 101

F

File information, 232
[File naming], 296
[File number sequence], 321
[Filter effects], 367
  [Skylight], 367
  [Warm filter], 367
[Fine tune optimal exposure], 315
[Firmware version], 359
Flash, 134, 189, 197, 326, 327
  bracketing, 134, 327
  control, 196
    i-TTL balanced-fill flash for digital SLR, 196
    standard i-TTL flash for digital SLR, 196
  mode, 197
  modeling, 326
  monitor pre-flash, 190
  range, 200
  ready indicator, 194, 202
  sync speed, 325
  sync terminal, 204
[Flash shutter speed], 326
[Flash sync speed], 325
flexible, 119
Fn button, 64, 201, 331
f-number, 38, 116
Focal length, 220
Focal plane mark, 84
Focus, 74
  autofocus, 74, 76, 78, 80, 82
    contrast-detect, 91, 98, 99, 100
    phase-detection, 91, 100
  electronic range finding, 84, 95, 386
  indicator, 55, 74, 84, 304, 305
  lock, 80, 82, 311
  mode, 74, 304, 305
    continuous-servo AF, 74, 304
    manual, 74, 83, 95
    single-servo AF, 74, 305
  point, 51, 78, 310
    contrast-detect, 91, 98, 99, 100
  tracking, 75, 77, 308
    3D, 76, 77, 307
    predictive, 75
[Focus point illumination], 309
[Focus point wrap-around], 310
[Focus tracking with lock-on], 308
Focusing screen, 384
  type B clear-matte VI, 384
  type E clear-matte VI, 384
Format, 45, 345
[Format memory card], 345
Front-curtain sync, 197
FV lock, 201, 331

G

[GPS], 223
GPS, 223, 231, 238, 388
  connecting, 223
  data, 231, 238
GPS data, 238

H

[HDMI], 346
HDMI, 276, 346, 436
Help, 31
HI, 109
[Hide image], 281
High definition, 274, 276, 346, 436
[High ISO NR], 299
Highlights, 232, 233, 282
Histogram, 233, 282

I

[Image area], 60, 63
  [5:4 (30x24)], 61
  [Auto DX crop], 60, 63
  [Choose image area], 61, 63
  [FX format (36x24)], 61
Image area, 38, 60, 69, 297
[Image authentication], 354
[Image comment], 348

Image Dust Off, 351
[Image overlay], 368
[Image quality], 65
Image quality, 65
[Image review], 287
[Image size], 69
Image size, 69
[Index print], 271
In-focus indicator, 55, 74, 84, 304, 305
Information, 14, 231, 323
[Interval timer shooting], 213
Interval timer shooting, 213
[ISO sensitivity], 108
  [ISO sensitivity auto control], 110
    [Maximum sensitivity], 110
    [Minimum shutter speed], 110
  [ISO sensitivity settings], 109
ISO sensitivity, 107
[ISO sensitivity step value], 313
i-TTL, 190, 196

J

JPEG, 65, 67, 71
[JPEG compression], 67
  [Optimal quality], 67
  [Size priority], 67

L

L, 69
LAN, 383
[Language], 347
LCD, 10, 324, 345, 399, 400
[LCD brightness], 345
[LCD illumination], 324
Lens, 37, 84, 378
  attaching, 37
  cap, 37, 38
  cap, rear, 37
  compatible, 378
  CPU, 38, 380
  distance information, 196
  focus ring, 38
  mounting index, 37, 38
  non-CPU, 220, 381
    data, 221
  removing, 38
  type D, 380
  type G, 380
[Live view], 90
  [Live view mode], 91
    [Hand-held], 91, 94
    [Tripod], 91, 97
  [Release mode], 92
Live view, 90–102
LO, 109
[Lock mirror up for cleaning], 345
[Long exp. NR], 299

M

M, 74, 83
M (manual focus mode), 83
M (medium), 69
Magenta, 148, 367
[Manage Picture Control], 174
Manual, 83, 95, 124
Mass Storage, 257, 350
Matrix, 114, 316, 332
[Max. continuous release], 320
Memory buffer, 88, 89
Memory card, 42, 345, 389
  capacity of, 423
  formatting, 45, 345
  slot, 42, 160, 230
Metering, 114, 316, 332
  center-weighted, 114
  matrix, 114
  selector, 53, 115
  spot, 114
Microdrive, 6, 42, 389
Mirror, 86, 90, 105
  lock up for cleaning, 395
[Modeling flash], 326
Monitor, 14, 57, 90, 101, 231, 318, 390
[Monitor off delay], 318
[Monochrome], 366
  [Black-and-white], 366
  [Cyanotype], 366
  [Sepia], 366
Mounting index, 37, 38
MTP/PTP, 257, 350

[Multi selector], 331
[Multi selector center button], 330
[Multiple exposure], 208
Multiple exposure, 208
[My Menu], 373
  [Add items], 373
  [Rank items], 376
  [Remove items], 375

N

NEF, 65, 68
NEF (RAW), 65, 68
[NEF (RAW) recording], 68
  [NEF (RAW) bit depth], 68
    [12-bit], 68
    [14-bit], 68
  [Type], 68
    [Compressed], 68
    [Lossless compressed], 68
    [Uncompressed], 68
Nikon Transfer, 256
[No memory card?], 342
[Non-CPU lens data], 220

O

Overview data, 239, 240

P

PC, 223, 259
Photo info, 231
[Photo info/playback], 331
PictBridge, 263, 436
Picture angle, 60, 297, 382
Picture Controls, 166
Playback, 57, 227, 274
  folder, 281
  full-frame, 228
  information, 231
  menu, 278
  slide show, 288
  thumbnail, 241, 330
  zoom, 243
[Playback folder], 281
Print options (PictBridge [Setup] menu), 266
  [Border], 266
  [Cropping], 267
  [No. of copies], 266
  [Page size], 266
  [Start printing], 267
  [Time stamp], 266
[Print select], 268
  [Border], 270
  [Page size], 270
  [Start printing], 270
  [Time stamp], 270
[Print set (DPOF)], 268, 272
  [Border], 270
  [Page size], 270
  [Start printing], 270
  [Time stamp], 270
Printing, 262
Programmed auto, 118
Protecting photographs, 244

R

Rear-curtain sync, 197
[Red-eye correction], 364
Red-eye reduction, 197
Red-eye reduction with slow sync, 198
[Release button to use dial], 341
Release mode, 85
  continuous, 86, 88
    high speed, 86, 88
    low speed, 86, 88
  live view, 86, 90
  mirror up, 105
  self-timer, 86, 103
  single frame, 86
Remote cord, 388
Reset, 206, 293, 303, 418
[Reset custom settings], 303
[Reset shooting menu], 293
[Reverse indicators], 343
RGB color space, 188

RGB histogram, 233, 282
[Rotate tall], 287

S
S (single-point AF), 76
S (single-servo AF), 74, 80
S (small), 69
[Save/load settings], 355
Saving camera settings, 355
[Self-timer delay], 318
Sensitivity, 107
[Set Picture Control], 166
  [Monochrome], 168
    [Filter effects], 171, 173
    [Toning], 171, 173
  [Neutral], 168
  [Standard], 168
  [Vivid], 168
Setup menu, 344
Shooting data, 235, 236, 237
[Shooting info display], 323
Shooting menu, 290
[Shooting menu bank], 291
[Shooting speed], 320
Shutter speed, 120, 127
  auto FP high-speed sync, 190, 197, 325
  flash sync speed, 197, 325
  lock, 127
Shutter-priority auto, 120
Shutter-release button, 3, 56
[Shutter-release button AE-L], 317
[Side-by-side comparison], 371
Single-point AF, 76
Size, 69
[Slide show], 288
  [Frame interval], 288
Slide show, 288
[Slot 2], 71, 296
  [Backup], 71
  [Overflow], 71
  [RAW Slot 1-JPEG Slot 2], 71
Slot selection, 160, 230, 272, 279, 361
Slow sync, 197
Speedlight, 190
Spot, 114, 316

T
Television, 274
Ten-pin remote terminal, 4, 223, 388
Thumbnail, 241, 330
TIFF (RGB), 65
Time, 39, 347
Time exposure, 126, 388
Timer, 103, 213
[Trim], 365
Two-button reset, 206

U
[USB], 257, 350
  [Mass Storage], 257, 350
  [MTP/PTP], 257, 350
USB, 256, 350
  cable, i, 256

V
[Vertical AF-ON button], 312
Vertical shutter-release button lock, 335
Video, 274, 346
[Video mode], 346
Viewfinder, xviii, 6, 7, 12, 47, 384, 385, 402
  eyepiece, 47, 103, 215, 384, 385
  focus, 47
ViewNX, 167, 348
[Virtual horizon], 357
Virtual horizon, 333, 357
[Voice memo], 248, 349
Voice memo, 229, 246, 247–254
[Voice memo button], 249, 350
[Voice memo overwrite], 249, 350

W
WB, 6, 150
[White balance], 144
  [Auto], 144
  [Choose color temp.], 145
  [Cloudy], 145
  [Direct sunlight], 144
  [Flash], 145
  [Fluorescent], 144

[Incandescent], 144
[Preset manual], 145
[Shade], 145
White balance, 143
bracketing, 134, 139
preset manual, 145, 152
Wireless, 191, 261, 262, 354, 383
network, 261
transmitter, 261, 354
[Wireless transmitter], 354
[World time], 347
[Date and time], 347
[Date format], 347
[Daylight saving time], 347
[Time zone], 347
WT-4, 261, 262, 354, 383

Nikon

No reproduction in any form of this manual, in whole or in part (except for brief quotation in critical articles or reviews), may be made without written authorization from NIKON CORPORATION.

CE

NIKON CORPORATION
Fuji Bldg., 2-3 Marunouchi 3-chome,
Chiyoda-ku,Tokyo 100-8331, Japan

Printed in Japan
SB7J01(11)
6MB00711-01